



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

NYPL RESEARCH LIBRARIES



3 3433 00605707 3

SIR JOHN FROISSART'S
CHRONICLES
OR
ENGLAND, FRANCE, SPAIN,
AND THE
ADJOINING COUNTRIES,
FROM THE LATTER PART OF THE REIGN OF EDWARD II.
TO THE CORONATION OF HENRY IV.

NEWLY TRANSLATED FROM THE FRENCH EDITIONS,
WITH VARIATIONS AND ADDITIONS FROM MANY CELEBRATED MSS.

BY THOMAS JOHNES.

Who so shall telle a tale after a man,
He m'le rehers, as neighe as ever he can,
Quèirc wordz, if it be in his charge,
All speke he never so rudenly and so large;
Or elles he moske tellen his tale untrewe,
Or feinen thinges, or fudren wordes newe.

CHAUCER'S PROLOGUE

THE SECOND EDITION.

TO WHICH IS PREFIXED,
A LIFE OF THE AUTHOR, AN ESSAY ON HIS WORKS,
A CRITICISM ON HIS HISTORY,
AND A DISSERTATION ON HIS POETRY.

VOL. XI.

LONDON:

PRINTED FOR LONGMAN, HURST, REES, AND ORME, PATRONOSTER-ROW,
AND J. WHITE, FLEET-STREET.

1806.



REF ID: C 2 E D 177

Brooke, Printer,
Paternoster Row.

THE
CONTENTS
OF
THE ELEVENTH VOLUME.

CHAP. I. The King of France summons the Duke of Brittany to deliver up Sir Peter de Craon.—His Answer not being satisfactory, the King declares War against him.—The King's Uncles murmur at the great Riches of the Constable, which were disclosed by his Will	1
II. The Duke of Touraine is created Duke of Orleans.—The Constable of France being recovered, the King of France advances to Mans, with the Intention of continuing his March, to make War on the Duke of Brittany	6
III. The King of France, during his Stay at Mans, again sends some noble Personages to the Duke of Brittany, with Orders to dismiss Sir Peter de Craon.—The King is informed that Sir Peter is arrested at Barcelona by Command of the Queen of Arragon	11
IV. The King, having left Mans to carry on his War against Brittany, is ordered to return, by an unknown Person.—This same Day, his Mind is deranged, and he is brought back to Mans	17

CHAP.

CHAP. V. King Charles VI. of France, continuing deranged in Mind, is removed from Mans to Creil, on the Oise.—The Regency of the Kingdom is given to the Dukes of Berry and Burgundy by the three Estates	27
VI. The Lord de Coucy introduces the great Physician, Master William de Harseley, to cure the King of France.—Various Causes assigned for this Disorder	31
VII. The Dukes of Berry and Burgundy ruin those who had been the confidential Servants of the King.—The Duke of Burgundy treats rudely the Constable de Clisson	35
VIII. Sir Oliver de Clisson, after the harsh Answer of the Duke of Burgundy, retires to Montlhery.—Being pursued thither, he has Time to make his Retreat to Chateau Josselin	41
IX. The Lord de la Riviere, the principal Minister of the King of France before his Illness, is made Prisoner by Orders of the Dukes of Berry and Burgundy.—The Duchess of Berry intercedes for him with her Lord	45
X. After many Adjournments and Delays, the Constable de Clisson is, by Judgment of the Court of Parliament of Paris, banished the Realm of France, condemned to pay a Fine of One Hundred Thousand Francs, and declared incapable of holding the Office of Constable of France	54

CHAP. XI. King Charles recovers his Senses through the Mercy of God, and the diligent Attention of his Physician, Master William de Harzeley	- - - 60
XII. The Truce is prolonged between France and England.—The Viscount de Chastelbon does Homage for the County of Foix to the King of France	63
XIII. The King of France is in great Danger of his Life at a masqued Dance of Men dressed like Savages.—Pope Boniface and the Cardinals at Rome send a learned Friar to the King	- 69
XIV. The Duchess of Berry supports the Lord de la Riviere, in opposition to the Duchess of Burgundy	- - 73
XV. The Lord de Coucy refuses to accept the Sword of Constable in the room of Clisson.—The Dukes of Berry and Burgundy invest the Lord Philip d'Artois, count d'Eu, with it, in con- sideration of his Marriage with the Lady Mary of Berry, Widow of the Lord Louis de Blois	- - - 81
XVI. The Constable de Clisson, during his Absence from France, wages War on the Duke of Brittany	- - 87
XVII. A Treaty of Peace is concluded between the Kings of France and England, through the Mediation of their Uncles	- - - 93
XVIII. The Treaty of Peace is nearly broken off by Pope Boniface, and by the King of France relapsing into his for- mer Illness	- - - 107

CHAP.

CHAP. XIX. The Death of Pope Clement at Avignon.—The Election of Pope Benedict.—A learned Clerk, in the Archbishoprick of Rheims, supports the Right of the See of Avignon, by his Speeches and Preachings - - - - 111

XX. The King of England is advised to make a Journey to Ireland, and to settle on the Duke of Lancaster, and his Heirs for ever, the Duchy of Aquitaine with all its Dependencies - - - - 117

XXI. The Death of the Lady Anne of Bohemia, Queen of England.—The Duke of Lancaster lands in Aquitaine, and the King of England in Ireland - - - - 120

XXII. Sir John Froissart arrives in England, and is presented to King Richard by the Duke of York, Uncle to the King - - - - 125

XXIII. The Information Froissart gains in England, touching the Opposition of the Inhabitants of Aquitaine to the Gift the King of England had made of it to his Uncle the Duke of Lancaster.—The Commissioners sent to remonstrate on the Matter with the King cannot obtain a decisive Answer relative thereto - - 135

XXIV. Froissart presents his Book of Love Poems to King Richard of England.—He relates what he had heard of the last Expedition of the English to Ireland - - - - 153

CHAP. XXV. The Duke of Lancaster is ordered back from Aquitaine.—King Richard receives a friendly Answer to the Proposals his Ambassadors had made to the King of France for a Marriage between him and the Lady Isabella, Princess of France - - - - 168

XXVI. A Squire of Normandy, called Robert the Hermit, having declared he had seen a Vision, while at Sea, ordering him to interfere in making a Peace between France and England, is sent to King Richard and his Uncles to this Effect - - - - 175

XXVII. The Lord de la Riviere and Sir John le Mercier are delivered out of Prison - - - - 189

XXVIII. The Duke of Brittany and Sir Oliver de Clisson are reconciled.—The Dowager Queen of Sicily institutes a Law-Suit in the Courts of Paris against Sir Peter de Craon 191

XXIX. The King of Hungary writes to the King of France his Situation in respect to the Sultan Bajazet.—John of Burgundy, eldest Son to the Duke of Burgundy, marches, as Commander in Chief, an Army to the Succour of the Hungarians - - - - 204

XXX. The Count d'Ostrevant, Brother-in-Law to John of Burgundy, being desirous to march to Hungary, is advised by his Father to attempt, in preference, the Re-conquest of Friesland, which belonged to them 213

CHAP. XXXI. John of Burgundy, Count of Nevers, leads an Army into Hungary against the Turks.—The Negotiations for the Marriage of King Richard of England with the eldest Princess of France are continued - - - 217

XXXII. The Queen of Naples, Widow to the late Duke of Anjou, obtains Judgment in Parliament against Sir Peter de Craon - - - 220

XXXIII. The Marriage is concluded between King Richard of England and the Lady Isabella, eldest Daughter to Charles VI. King of France.—The Duke of Lancaster marries again.—Sir Peter de Craon is, after some Time, delivered from Prison, at the Entreaty of the young Queen of England - - - 224

XXXIV. John of Burgundy, Count of Nevers, passes the Danube with his Army.—After the Capture of several Places, the Town of Nicopoli is besieged - - - 229

XXXV. A Digression from the principal History to explain why John Galeas of Milan was moved to give the Turk Information of the Expedition intended against him 235

XXXVI. While Bajazet is raising a great Army to oppose the Hungarians and French, the Lord de Coucy, during the Siege of Nicopoli, defeats a large Body of Turks with an inferior Force - - - 241

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXVII. The Duke of Gueldres prevents the Earl of Derby joining the Counts of Hainault and of Ostrevant in their Expedition against Friesland.—Negotiations for Peace between France and England are continued until King Richard crosses over to Calais, to conclude them with the Duke of Burgundy - 254

XXXVIII. The Counts of Hainault and of Ostrevant raise a large Army of Men at Arms, Knights and Squires, to invade Friesland.—The King of France sends them Assistance, under the Command of Count Walleran de Saint Pol and the Lord Charles d'Albret - - 262

XXXIX. The Earl of Hainault lands with his Army in Friesland.—He defeats the Frieslanders in Battle, but is nevertheless forced to retire to Holland, to pass the Winter, without having gained any thing in Friesland 270

XL. The Ceremony of the Marriage of the King of England with a Princess of France.—The King of France delivers her to the King of England, in his Tent between Ardres and Calais - - 280

CHAP.

CHAP. XLI. The Christians are forced to raise the Siege of Nicopoli, by the Arrival of Bajazet in Turkey.—They are defeated, and the Hungarians put to Flight, through the presumptuous Folly of the French - - 291

XLII. The Turks, after the Battle of Nicopoli, put to Death all their Prisoners, except the Count de Nevers and some other great Lords 301

XLIII. The French and others who had been in Turkey suffer great Hardships on their Return home, after having escaped from the Battle of Nicopoli.—Sir James de Helly brings certain Intelligence of this Defeat to the King of France - - 310

XLIV. Sir James de Helly, having received his Dispatches from the King of France, arrives in Hungary, in his Way to Turkey.—The King sends Sir John de Chastelmorant, with Presents to Bajazet, and his Recommendations in favour of the French Prisoners.—The Manner in which they are treated - - 315

XLV. Sir James de Helly, on his Return to Turkey, obtains his Liberty, and carries a Passport from the Sultan to Sir John de Chastelmorant in Hungary.—Sir John de Chastelmorant is forced to send a Messenger to the King of France, to inform him that the King of Hungary will not allow the Presents to be carried to the Sultan - - 322

CHAP. XLVI. The Duchess of Orleans is suspected
of causing the King's Illness - 330

XLVII. The Duke and Duchess of Burgundy
diligently exert themselves to find
Means to ransom the Count de
Nevers, their Son, and his Fel-
low-Prisoners in Turkey.—The
King of Hungary, through the
Persuasion of the Grand Master
of Rhodes, permits the Ambassa-
dor from the King of France to pass
through his Kingdom with the Pre-
sents for the Sultan Bajazet - 333

XLVIII. The Duke of Gloucester plots the
Destruction of his Nephew the
King of England.—The King,
having Information of his Prac-
tices, has him arrested by the Earl
Marshal - - - 338

XLIX. The Lord de Coucy and the Count
d'Eu, Constable of France, die in
Turkey, before the Treaty for their
Deliverance is arranged.—A Ran-
som is agreed on for the other
Prisoners who were taken at the
Battle of Nicopoli - - - 365



THE
CHRONICLES
OF
ENGLAND, FRANCE, SPAIN, &c.

CHAP. I.

THE KING OF FRANCE SUMMONS THE DUKE OF BRITTANY TO DELIVER UP SIR PETER DE CRAON.—HIS ANSWER NOT BEING SATISFACTORY, THE KING DECLARES WAR AGAINST HIM.—THE KING'S UNCLES MURMUR AT THE GREAT RICHES OF THE CONSTABLE, WHICH WERE DISCLOSED BY HIS WILL.

INTELLIGENCE was brought to the king of France some days after the assassination of the constable, that the duke of Brittany had received sir Peter de Craon. His most confidential counsellors advised him to send instantly to the duke of Brittany, and summon him, on his faith and homage, should that false traitor to the crown of France, sir Peter de Craon, be in any parts of Brittany, to arrest him and send him without delay to France.

When these letters were written and sealed, they were given to one of the king's messengers, who set out for Brittany, and found the duke at his castle of Ermine, near Vannes. The duke, having received and read the letters, told the messenger he would write an answer to the king. The substance of it was, that he excused himself from knowing any thing of sir Peter de Craon, or where he was ; nor did he wish to know any thing, for it was no concern of his ; and that, as to sir Peter's hatred and quarrel with sir Oliver de Clisson, it no way touched or regarded him, and he entreated the king to hold him excused. When this answer had been properly drawn up and sealed, it was given to the messenger, who returned with it to Paris. The king and his council were impatient to receive the duke's answer, and, when the letters were delivered to the king, he attentively read them, and turning to his brother, the duke of Touraine, and the council, said, ' This is not satisfactory.' Orlies replied, that the duke of Brittany was at the bottom of the whole mischief. The king and the duke of Touraine declared, that such an outrage was too great to be lightly passed over, and was a direct attack on the royal majesty of France.

The duke of Berry was at this time in Paris, and, in his frequent visits to the palace, the king talked much to him concerning the crime of sir Peter de Craon. The duke replied ; ' My lord, he has certainly committed a great outrage ; and, if it were known where he was, I would advise that

that he be arrested and punished for it.' 'Good uncle,' said the king, 'he is now with the duke in Brittany, and nowhere else: we are determined to march thither, and you shall accompany us.' The duke of Berry assented, though he was dissembling his real sentiments, and added, 'My lord, we must have our good brother of Burgundy also with us.' 'We will have him,' replied the king, 'for we will not go without him; and our army shall be of strength sufficient to conquer all our enemies. We now clearly see, that this duke of Brittany neither loves nor esteems us. Good uncle, he is very proud and presumptuous, and we will not attend to any other affair until we have brought him to reason.' Thus did the king and the duke of Berry converse together: the duke assented to every thing his nephew proposed, though determined, in his own mind, to act in opposition to it.

The king of France was too earnest in his desire to revenge the insult offered his constable, and was daily pressing forward the preparations for his expedition to Brittany. He was to march first into Anjou, to destroy all the castles and possessions held there by sir Peter de Craon, notwithstanding the duke of Brittany claimed them for his own by purchase. The king and his council answered, that he had never had possession given him of them; and that, from having supposed and protected sir Peter de Craon, he had incurred personally the indignation of the crown of France, although a marriage had this season been formed between the son of the duke and a princess of France,

While these preparations were going forward, and the rumour of the king's expedition against Brittany was every where talked of in France, the bishop of Noyon and the lord de la Riviere returned to Paris, having fulfilled their mission to Béarn and Foix. They related to the king and council what they had done; but the affairs of Brittany occupied so entirely the time of the council, that they could not attend to any thing else; and the king was impatient for the constable to be sufficiently recovered to mount his horse.

Before the king left Paris, he commanded the very handsome hôtel sir Oliver de Craon had, near the church-yard of St. John, to be razed to the ground, and the spot given for an addition to the church yard. The king ordered large provision of stores to be made on the roads to Anjou, Maine, Touraine, Brittany, and along the banks of the Loire, ready for his intended expedition; for no one dared make any opposition to it.

It was well known in Paris, and likewise in different parts of the country, that sir Oliver de Clisson, constable of France, had made his will, in order that, in case of death from his wounds, his heirs might know where to seek for his wealth. He had but two children, both females, one married to John of Brittany, count de Penthièvre, whom he had ransomed from England for six score thousand francs paid to the duke of Ireland, as has been related. His other daughter was, or would be, viscountess de Rohan, in right of her husband. The whole of his money and moveable property,

property, without including any part of his heritage, amounted to seventeen hundred thousand francs, to the great astonishment of all who heard it, as to the means by which he had been able to amass so large a sum. The dukes of Berry and Burgundy, in particular, were much surprised, as well as their councils, for the constable was not any way in favour with them ; so that, when among themselves, they thus spoke very freely on the subject : ‘ How the devil can this constable have collected such an immense sum of florins, and such splendid furniture ? The king of France has nothing like it. We must suppose that it has not been lawfully acquired.’ This passed off ; but those who hated him did not think the less of it.

The king was still at Paris, though his preparations were ready ; and all who had been summoned to accompany the expedition to Brittany were assembling accordingly. The duke of Burgundy was, however, much vexed at this war, saying it was made without reason, and would end badly ; for neither France nor Brittany, nor their knights and squires, were any way concerned in the quarrel between sir Oliver de Clisson and sir Peter de Craon ; nor had they any business to make war on their account, but should let them fight it out themselves, without thus destroying and harassing the poor of both countries. The duke of Berry was of the same opinion ; but they could not be heard, for the king had other counsellors to whom he listened in preference. They knew not, therefore, how to prevent the war from taking

place, and, when they saw the king was obstinately bent upon it, they obeyed, but as slowly as they could. I heard, and believe it true, that, through the intervention of the duke of Burgundy, the count d'Orfrevant was summoned by the king of France to attend him with three hundred lances; the count, who loved arms, made his preparations, and summoned his vassals, but, when he had completed every thing at a great expense, he received counter-orders, not to stir.

CHEAP. II.

THE DUKE OF TOURNAINE IS CREATED DUKE OF ORLEANS.—THE CONSTABLE OF FRANCE BEING RECOVERED, THE KING OF FRANCE ADVANCES TO MANS, WITH THE INTENTION OF CONTINUING HIS MARCH, TO MAKE WAR ON THE DUKE OF BRITTANY.

WHEN all things were ready for the king's departure from Paris, an exchange of lands was made between the king and the duke of Touraine, but this exchange was greatly in favour of the duke; for he surrendered to his brother the duchy of Touraine and its dependancies, receiving, in return, the duchy of Orleans, which was of four times the value, on the same terms and conditions that

that Philip, duke of Orleans, had formerly held it. We shall henceforward call him duke of Orleans.

The king was so pleased when sir Oliver de Clisson had recovered from his wounds sufficiently to ride that he said he would now set out from Paris to Brittany, to shew he made the quarrel his own. In consequence, he and the duke of Orleans took leave of the queen, the duchess, and the other ladies and damsels who were at the hôtel de Saint Pol, and went that night to the house of his minister, Montagu, where they supped and lay. The duke of Bourbon, the count de Namur and the lord de Coucy, went with them. I know not if they all lay there, but the king did so and dined there on the morrow. In the afternoon, he departed in handsome array; and supped and lay at St. Germain-en-laye, where he remained several days. At this period, according to the report of his physicians, the king's health was not good; but, he was so impatient to carry on the war, he declared his health was better than theirs. This he said to push forward the business; for his two uncles of Berry and Burgundy were still behind, and shewed clearly the expedition was contrary to their opinion, and that willingly they would avoid going with him. They had, however, issued summons to their vassals, for they were bound in honour to accompany the king.

When the king had sojourned at St. Germain for fifteen days, and the different lords were arrived, or on the road, he was advised to depart. He did so, crossed the Seine, and, marching for

Chartres, arrived at Auneau, a good town and handsome castle, that belonged to the lord de la Riviere in right of his wife. In company with him were the dukes of Orleans and Bourbon. The lord de la Riviere received the king and these lords very magnificently, as he was well able to do, and they remained his guests for three days. On the fourth day they departed, and went to Chartres, of which place the brother of Montagu was bishop. The king, the duke of Orleans, and the duke of Bourbon were lodged in the episcopal palace. On the second day, the duke of Berry, and the count de la Marche came there; but the duke of Burgundy was still behind. He had begun his journey, and on the fourth day arrived, to the great joy of the king. Men at arms were pouring in from all quarters; and the king said he would never return to Paris until he had made this duke of Brittany listen to reason, who had so often given him plague and vexation. There were too many about the king, who urged him on; so that the dukes of Berry and Burgundy, who wished for more moderate counsels, were not attended to. This created a disgust in them and their advisers; and they said among themselves, that public affairs could not long remain in their present hazardous and unsettled circumstances, and that the king was cutting out for himself and kingdom work enough, when he rejected the advice of his uncles and listened to others of little weight.

After staying about seven days in Chartres, he departed for Mans. He was followed by mea
at

at arms from Artois, Beauvais, Vermandois and Picardy, and other distant countries. They said when together,—‘ How comes this duke of Brittany to give us so much trouble. He is full of pride, and has never has been truly affectionate to the crown of France. If it had not been for his cousin, the late earl of Flanders, who supported him, and the duchess of Burgundy, who does so at this moment, he would long ago have been destroyed. He never could bear the lord de Clisson from the moment he quitted the English party, and is greatly to blame now in assisting sir Peter de Craon against the king and the constable.’ Others replied,—‘ Let the king alone ; for he has taken this busines so much to heart, he will make the duke repent of it before he return.’ ‘ That he will,’ said others, ‘ if there be no treachery in his way. Do you suppose that all who now accompany him are enemies to the duke of Brittany ? Certainly not ; for, whatever they may dare say, they shew their intentions too openly by their actions. They are plotting night and day how they may prevent this expedition, and they harass the king so much, it will be well if he keep his health.’

Such were the conversations of the men at arms on their march, following the king to Maine. The king, on his arrival at Mans, was lodged in the castle, and his lords in the town as well as the state of its accommodations would allow. The army spread themselves abroad in the plains, which were

were rich and good lodging for men at arms. The king and his court remained in the city of Mans upwards of three weeks, for the king was in a very feverish state and unfit to ride.

The physicians told the duke of Orleans and his uncles, that the king was oppressed with too much business, and was not in a situation to go through it; that rest and quiet were absolutely necessary; for that ever since he had left Amiens after the conferences, his health had not been so good as it was formerly. The king's uncles remonstrated on all this with the council, for the king would not pay any attention to what the physicians said; and he was so impatient to carry the war into Brittany, he told his uncles, that he was always better when on horseback, than when doing nothing, and added, 'Whoever advises me to the contrary will highly displease me, and shew he has not any love for me.' This was all the answer he would give. Every day there was a council holden, which lasted until noon, or beyond it; and the king would always be present, to check any delays being made to the expedition into Brittany.

CHAR. III.

THE KING OF FRANCE, DURING HIS STAY AT MANS, AGAIN SENDS SOME NOBLE PERSONAGES TO THE DUKE OF BRITTANY, WITH ORDERS TO DISMISS SIR PETER DE CRAON.—THE KING IS INFORMED THAT SIR PETER IS ARRESTED AT BARCELONA BY COMMAND OF THE QUEEN OF ARRAGON.

THE King was advised, during his stay at Mans, to which he assented, out of affection for his uncle, to send four knights to Brittany. They were to remonstrate strongly with the duke, on the part of the king and council, how greatly he had misbehaved by affording an asylum to an enemy of the king and realm; and that, if he were desirous to acknowledge his fault, and make amends for it, he must send Sir Peter de Craon to Mans, when they would endeavour to make his peace with the king, and prevent this expedition from doing harm to him or to his country.

According to what I heard, sir Reginald de Roye, the lord de Varenciers, the lord de Château-morant and sir Taupin de Cantemelle, governor of Gisors, were ordered on this mission. They left the city of Mans with forty lances, and, having passed through Angers, journeyed on to Nantes, when, having entered the town, they found there the duke. He gave them a good welcome,

come, and entertained them with a splendid dinner ; but, before this, they had fulfilled their commission, and had ably explained to him the object of their coming, and what the king and council had ordered them to say. The duke answered prudently and nobly, ‘ that he would be most happy to arrest and give up to the king sir Peter de Craon, but, as God might help him, he neither knew where he was, nor what he was about : he therefore entreated these lords to make his peace, for he had assured them of the truth,’ adding, ‘ he had heard, upwards of a year ago, sir Peter de Craon declare, that sir Oliver de Clisson hated him so mortally, he would attack him the first favourable opportunity, with all the force he could muster, let the event be what it would. When he told me this, I asked if he had notified this to sir Oliver : he said he had, and had sent him his defiance, adding, that he would put him to death, by day or night, the very first time he met him. I know nothing further of the matter, and am surprised that my lord should think of making war on me for this cause. Begging his pardon, I do not feel that I am any way so blameable, either towards him or the kingdom of France, that war should be declared against me ; for never will I infringe, if it please God, the alliances that have been entered into between us, as well in regard to the marriage of our children, as respecting other matters.’

This was the answer the French knights received from the duke of Brittany ; and, when they had dined

dined with him, and remained one day more at Nantes, they took leave, and set out on their return the way they had come.

The king and council were impatient for their arrival, to hear the duke's answer. What you have just heard, the knights repeated to the king, and to those interested, from the duke of Brittany. The dukes of Berry and Burgundy were well satisfied with it, and would have persuaded others to be so likewise, saying the answer was proper and reasonable. But the king declared that, from the information he had received, he was of a contrary opinion, and since he was come so far, he would never return to Paris until he had humbled the duke of Brittany.

The dukes of Berry and Burgundy would willingly have altered this declaration, had they known how, but they were not attended to; and the king had taken such a hatred to sir Peter de Craon, whom he said the duke of Brittany secreted in his country, that no excuses were of avail.

There was a report at Mans, and in many other places of France, that the lady Jolande de Bar, queen of Arragon, and cousin-german to the king of France, had thrown into the prisons of Barcelona, a knight who was unknown to her or to her people; and, from his refusal to tell his name, he was thought to be sir Peter de Craon. The queen of Arragon, wishing to please the king, wrote to him in the most friendly terms, to say,—
‘ that on the fifth day of July a knight, with a
handsome

handsome array, had come to Barcelona, with intent to cross the sea; that he had hired, at a very dear rate, a vessel to carry him, as he said, to Naples. Having had all our ports well guarded, so that no stranger could leave them without permission, and this knight refusing to say who he was, we have detained him in prison. We suppose, from the great anxiety he shews for his liberty, that he is the knight you are seeking for, and on whose account you have written to us. Have the goodness, therefore, to send hither, as speedily as may be, some persons who are acquainted with sir Peter de Craon; for he whom we hold in prison shall not be set at liberty until we have heard from you. We shall learn with pleasure that the intelligence we have sent has been agreeable to you and to your council. May the Holy Spirit have you in his keeping! Written at Perpignan the ninth day of July, and signed 'Jolande de Bar, queen of Arragon and Majorca, lady of Sardinia.' The superscription was, 'To our very redoubted lord the king of France.'

This intelligence softened 'the hearts' of many, and the expedition was on the point of being broken off; but the friends of the constable thought this was an invented story, to prevent the king advancing further; and that sir Peter de Craon was in danger of no other prison than what the duke of Brittany pleased, for he was safely in refuge within his duchy. The king paid no attention to this letter, saying it was all deceit; but the duke of Burgundy replied,—'At least, my lord,

to satisfy my niece of Arragon, who has written to you, and to deliver this knight, if he be guiltless, condescend to send some one thither, that our cousin may not be displeased with you and with us.'

'We are very willing to do so, good uncle,' said the king, 'for I wish not to vex you. Let some persons be sent to Barcelona; but I am firmly persuaded that the traitor, Peter de Craon, is not there, nor in any prison but the duke of Brittany's palace; and I swear, by the faith I owe St. Denis, that one day he shall severely pay for it.'

Nothing could alter the king's opinion that sir Peter de Craon was in Brittany. The duke of Brittany received regular information of what was passing, and, as the king was so much enraged against him, was not well satisfied of his security; for he saw that the dukes of Berry and Burgundy had no weight in the council, and that the party of his adversary, Clisson, led the king just as they pleased. He had his castles and towns most strictly guarded; but, unfortunately for him, there were no towns or castles he dared trust his person to, excepting Vannes, Campel, Dol, Quimperlé, Ermine, Quimper-corentin and Succinio. He had written to the knights and barons of Brittany, from whom he looked for support and advice, but they all dissembled with him, 'seeing the king, their lord paramount, so wroth against him, and from his so openly taking the part of sir Peter de Craon against the king and the constable, which was very indecent. He almost repented what he had

had done ; but, his spirit was so lofty, he disdained to own it, and he said to himself,—‘ If the king, as he seems now inclined, enter Brittany with his army, I will not, at the beginning, make any opposition, that I may see who are my friends and enemies, nor will I hurry myself to retaliation; but, when he shall think himself in full security, I will fall upon him, since there is no other way obtaining peace.’

Thus did the duke consult with himself, and sometimes with his ministers; for he concluded that war with France was now inevitable. It was not so however, for matters turned out otherwise than he expected, to his great advantage. The old proverb says, ‘ He is not poor who is lucky.’ The duke of Brittany was wondrous fortunate at this season, from an astonishing and pitiable accident that befel the king of France. Nothing less could have withdrawn from him the dangers he was surrounded by, and permitted him the enjoyment of peace.

CHAP. IV.

THE KING, HAVING LEFT MANS TO CARRY ON HIS WAR AGAINST BRITTANY, IS ORDERED TO RETURN, BY AN UNKNOWN PERSON.— THIS SAME DAY, HIS MIND IS DERANGED, AND HE IS BROUGHT BACK TO MANS.

WHEN the king of France had resided about three weeks in the city of Mans, during which time councils were daily held, and when the knights were returned with the duke of Brittany's answer, as you have heard; the king said, that since he knew what to depend on, he would not longer stay at Mans, for it was displeasing and hurtful to him, but advance towards the frontiers of Brittany, nearer this duke, who was supporting the traitor, sir Peter de Craon.

The intention of the king was to deprive the duke of Brittany of his duchy, and nominate a governor of it, until his children should be of age to have it restored to them; but the present duke was to be driven thence; and, this determination was so firmly rooted in his mind, nothing could make him change it. He set out from Mans between nine and ten o'clock in the morning; and the lords and others who had been quartered there, prepared to follow him, after they had heard mass and drank a cup. He had, the evening before, sent for the marshals of his army to his chamber, and

ordered them to have the men at arms ready by early morn to march to Angers ; ‘ for,’ he added, ‘ we have determined never to return from Brittany, until we shall have destroyed the traitors who give us so much trouble.’

The marshals gave their orders for the army to march on the morrow, and assured the captains that it was now determined upon to pursue the road to Brittany. The day the king left Mans was excessively hot, as was to be expected, for it was the middle of August, when the sun is in its greatest force.

You must know, in order perhaps to account truly for what followed, that the king, during his stay at Mans, laboured hard and assiduously in the council, where he had but little assistance, and was beside not perfectly recovered in health. He had been the whole summer feeble in body and mind, scarcely eating or drinking any thing, and almost daily attacked with fever, to which he was naturally inclined, and this was increased by any contradiction or fatigue. He suffered much from the insult offered his constable, so that his physicians and uncles noticed that at times his intellects were deranged ; but they could not do any thing, for he would not listen to what they proposed, nor would he consent, on any account, to defer the expedition to Brittany.

I was told that a strange accident happened to him as he was riding through the forest of Mans, for which he ought to have assembled his council, instead of pursuing his march farther. A man,

bare

bare headed with naked feet, clothed in a jerkin of white russet, that shewed he was more mad than otherwise, rushed out from among the trees, and boldly seized the reins of the king's horse. Having thus stopped him, he said, ' King, ride no further, but return, for thou art betrayed.' This speech made such an impression on the king's mind, which was weak, that his understanding was shaken.

As the man finished his speech, the men at arms advanced and beat him soundly on his hands, which made him drop the reins. They suffered him to run off, without paying attention to what he had said, thinking he was some madman, for which they were by many afterwards greatly blamed and disgraced: they ought at least to have arrested him, to have examined if he were really mad, and to learn why he had uttered such words, and whence he had come. Nothing, however, was done, and he made off by their rear, and was never after seen by any who had the least knowledge of him. Those who were near the king's person heard very plainly the words he had spoken.

The king and his army passed on; and it might be about twelve o'clock when they were clear of the forest. They now entered an extensive sandy plain; and the sun was so resplendent, and in such force, that scarcely any could endure the heat: the horses, consequently, suffered much. There were none so used to arms as not to complain of the oppressive heat; and the lords took different routes, apart from each other. The king rode by himself,

himself, to have less dust ; and the dukes of Berry and Burgundy, conversing together, kept on his left hand, at about two acres distance from him.

The other lords, such as the count de la Marche, sir James de Bourbon, sir Charles d'Albret, sir Philip d'Artois, sir Henry and sir Philip de Bar, sir Peter de Navarre, rode in different paths. The duke of Bourbon, the lord de Coucy, sir Charles d'Angers, the baron d'Ivry, were following at a gentle pace, talking together, and some distance from the king, not suspecting the misfortune which was on the point of befalling him. It was manifestly the work of God, whose punishments are severe, to make his creatures tremble. Have we not seen many similar examples, both in the Old and the New Testament, especially in the instance of Nebuchadnezzar, king of the Assyrians ? He reigned over them with such power, that nothing was spoken of but his magnificence and glory ; when suddenly, in the midst of his pomp, the Lord of kings, God, the Master of heaven and earth, and Creator of all things, struck him in such wise that he lost his senses and his kingdom. He continued for seven years in this deplorable state, living on acorns and wild fruits, having the taste of a wild boar or hog. After this period of penitence, God restored to him his senses and memory ; upon which he declared to Daniel, the servant of the Lord, that there was none other god but the God of Israel.

To speak truly, God the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost, three in name, but one in substance, was, is and ever will be, of as sufficient power to declare his works as from the beginning, and one ought not, therefore, to be surprised at whatever wonderful things happen. The reason why I thus speak is, that a great influence from Heaven this day fell on the king of France, and, as some say, from his own fault. The physicians of his body, who ought to have known well his constitution, declared, that considering the weak state of his health, he should not have thus exposed himself to the heat of the day, but have rode in the cool of the mornings or evenings. Those who had advised otherwise were disgraced; but he had been long led by his ministers to act just as they pleased.

The king rode over this sandy plain, that reflected the heat, which was much greater than had been ever before known or felt in that season: he was besides dressed in a jacket of black velvet that added to the warmth, and had only a single hood of crimson, ornamented with a chaplet of large beautiful pearls the queen had presented to him on his leaving her. He was followed by one of his pages, who had a montauban cap of polished steel on his head that glittered in the sun, and behind him another page rode on horseback, carrying a vermillion-coloured lance, enveloped with silk for the king, the head of which lance was broad, sharp and bright. The lord de la Riviere had brought a dozen such when he last came from

Toulouse, and this was one ; for he had presented the whole to the king, who had given three to the duke of Orleans, and the same number to the duke of Burgundy.

As they were thus riding, the pages, who were but children, grew negligent of themselves and their horses ; and the one who bore the lance fell asleep, and, forgetful of what he had in his hand, let it fall on the casque of the page before him, which made both the lance and casque ring loudly. The king, being so near, (the pages rode almost on the heels of his horse,) was startled and shuddered ; for he had in his mind the words the wise man or fool had spoken when he seized his horse's reins in the forest of Mans, and fancied a host of enemies were come to slay him.

In this distraction of mind, he drew his sword, and advanced on the pages, for his senses were quite gone, and imagined himself surrounded by enemies, giving blows of his sword, indifferent on whom they fell, and bawled out, ‘ Advance ! advance on these traitors.’ The pages, seeing the king thus yroth, took care of themselves, for they imagined they had angered him by their negligence, and spurred their horses different ways. The duke of Orleans was not far distant from the king, who made up to him with his drawn sword, for at that moment his frenzy had deprived him of the means of knowing either his brother or uncles. The duke of Orleans, seeing him approach with his naked sword, grew alarmed, and, spurring his horse, made off and the king after him. The duke of Burgundy, hearing the cries of the pages,

pages, cast his eyes to that quarter, and seeing the king pursuing his brother with his drawn fword, was thunderstruck, and not without reason : he cried out for help, saying,—‘ My lord has lost his senses : for God’s sake lay hands on him :’ and then added, ‘ Fly, fair nephew of Orleans : fly, or my lord will murder you.’ The duke of Orleans was much frightened, and galloped as fast as his horse could go, followed by knights and squires. There were now great shoutings, insomuch that those at a distance thought they were hunting a wolf or hare, until they learnt it was the king, who was not himself.

The duke of Orleans, however, escaped by making several turns, and was aided by knights, squires and men at arms, who surrounded the king, and allowed him to waste his strength on them ; for, of course, the more he exerted himself, the weaker he grew. When he made a blow at any one knight or squire, they fell before the stroke, and I never heard that in this fit of madness any one was killed. Several were struck down by his blows, because no one made any defence. At last, when he was quite jaded and running down with sweat, and his horse in a lather from fatigue, a Norman knight, who was one of his chamber-lains, and much beloved by him, called sir William Martel, came behind, and caught him in his arms, though he had his sword still in his hand. When he was thus held, all the other lords came up, and took the sword from him : he was dismounted, and gently laid on the ground, that his

jacket might be stripped from him, to give him more air and cool him.

His three uncles and brother approached ; but he had lost all knowledge of them, shewing no symptoms of acquaintance or affection, but rolled his eyes round in his head without speaking to any one. The princes of the blood were in amazement, and knew not what to say nor how to act. The dukes of Berry and Burgundy at length said, ‘ We must return to Mans, for the expedition is at an end for this season.’ They did not then say all they thought ; but they made their intentions very apparent to those who were not in their good graces, on their return to Paris, as I shall relate in the course of this history.

It must be owned, that when all things are considered, it was a great pity for a king of France, who is the most noble and powerful prince in the world, to be thus suddenly deprived of his senses. There could not be any remedy applied, nor any amendment expected, since God willed it should be so.

Having undressed and cooled him as gently as they coul^d, they laid him on a litter, and carried him slowly to Mans. The marshals instantly sent orders for the van to return, and the whole army was informed there was an end to the expedition. To some, the reasons were told why it was thus put an end to, to others not. The evening the king was brought back to Mans, his physicians were much occupied with him, and the princes of his blood in the utmost trouble. The event was spoken

of

of very differently : some said that the king, to ruin the kingdom of France, had been poisoned, or bewitched, the morning before he left Mans. These words were so often repeated, that they came to the ears of the duke of Orleans and others of the blood-royal. In conversation together, they said, —‘Do you hear, (for you must, unless you shut your ears) what murmurings there are against the king’s ministers ? It is reported, and commonly believed, that he has been poisoned or bewitched : now, how can we know whether this has been done or not ?’ Some made answer, ‘From his physicians, for they must know his habit and constitution.’ The physicians were sent for, and most strictly examined by the duke of Burgundy. To this examination they replied, ‘that the king had, for a long time, been suffering under this disorder ; and, knowing that this weakness of intellect oppressed him grievously, it would make its appearance.’

The duke of Burgundy told the physicians, ‘that in the whole of the matter they had honestly acquitted themselves, but that the king, from his great anxiety to undertake this war, would not listen to any advice on the subject of his health. Cursed be this expedition, and unhappy is it that ever it was proposed, for it has been his destruction ; and it would have been better that Clisson and his whole race had been murdered, than that the king had been afflicted with such a disorder. News of it will be carried every where, and, as he is now but a young man, we who are his uncles, and of his blood, who should have advised him, shall be much blamed,

blamed, though we have been no way in fault. Now tell us,' said the duke, addressing himself to the physicians, ' were you present yesterday morning at his dinner before he mounted his horse ?' ' Yes, in God's name were we,' said they. ' And what did he eat and drink ?' ' So very little, that it is scarcely worth mentioning ; for he sat musing the whole time.' ' And who was the person that last served him with liquor ?' asked the duke. ' That we know not,' said the physicians ; ' for as soon as the table was removed, we went away to make ourselves ready for riding, but you will learn it from his butlers or chamberlains.' Robert Tulles, a squire from Normandy, and head butler, was called. On his coming, he was questioned who had served the king with wine. He replied, ' My lords, sir Robert de Lignac.' The knight was then sent for, and asked where he had taken the wine to serve the king the morning before he mounted his horse. ' My lords,' said he, ' here is Robert Tulles who gave it me, and tasted it, as well as myself, in the king's presence.' ' That is true,' added Robert Tulles ; ' and in this respect there shall not be the smallest ground for suspicions ; for there is now some of the very same in bottles to what the king drank, which we will open and drink before you.'

The duke of Berry then said,—' We are debating here about nothing : the king is only poisoned or bewitched by bad advisers, but it is not time at present to talk of these matters. Let us bear the misfortune as well as we can for the moment.'

CHAP. V.

KING CHARLES VI. OF FRANCE, CONTINUING DERANGED IN MIND, IS REMOVED FROM MANS TO CREIL, ON THE OISE.—THE REGENCY OF THE KINGDOM IS GIVEN TO THE DUKES OF BERRY AND BURGUNDY BY THE THREE ESTATES.

ON the conclusion of the duke of Berry's speech, the lords retired to their lodgings for the night; and the king's uncles ordered four knights of honour to sit up with the king, to attend him quietly, and administer to his wants. They were sir Reginald de Roye, sir Reginald de Trie, the lord de Garencieres and sir William Martel. The lord de la Riviere, sir John le Mercier, Montagu, the bête de Villaines, sir William des Bordes and sir Helion de Lignac, were ordered not to interfere in any manner of business until the king should be perfectly recovered. On receiving this order, they departed, and others took charge of the government.

On the morrow morning the king's uncles visited him: they found him very weak, and asked how he had slept? His chamberlains replied, 'Very little: he cannot rest.' 'This is sad news,' said the duke of Burgundy. All three then approached him; and by this time the duke of Orleans arrived, and asked him how he was? He made no answer, but stared at them without recollecting who

who they were: These lords were much shocked, and, conversing together, said,—‘ We need not stay longer, for he is extremely ill, and we do him more harm than good by our presence. We have ordered his chamberlains and physicians to take every care of him, which of course they will do. Let us consider how the kingdom is to be governed, for a government must speedily be provided, or all things will go ill.’ ‘ Good brother,’ said the duke of Burgundy to the duke of Berry, ‘ it will be necessary for us to go to Paris, and order the king to be brought hence gently; for we can have him better attended when nearer to us than here. We will assemble the whole council at Paris, and discuss how the kingdom shall be governed, and whether our fair nephew of Orleans be regent or we.’ ‘ It is well spoken,’ replied the duke of Berry: ‘ let us consider of the best place for the king to be removed to for the recovery of his health.’ After some consultation, it was determined he should be carried, with every precaution, to the castle of Creil, which has a good air, and is in a rich country on the river Oise.

When this was settled, the men at arms were disbanded, and orders given by the marshals for them to retire peaceably to their homes, without committing any ravages on the country; and that, if such excesses were indulged in, the leaders would be called upon to make reparation.

The king’s uncles and the chancellor of France sent off varlets to the different cities and principal towns

towns in Picardy, to order the inhabitants to be very attentive in the guard of them, for the reason that the king was indisposed. These orders were obeyed. The French nation was dismayed and concerned when it was publicly known that the king laboured under a frenzy. They spoke much against those who had advised him to this expedition to Brittany, and said he had been betrayed by those who had urged him on against the duke and sir Peter de Craon. People's tongues could not be stopped, for it was so serious a misfortune, it was necessary vent should be somehow given to the vexation it caused.

The king was carried to Creil, and put under the care of the before named knights and his physicians. The men at arms were disbanded, and marched home. It was strictly forbidden the queen's household and all others, under pain of being severely punished, to mention this misfortune to the queen, who was far gone with child. It was concealed from her for some time, during which the king was under the care of the knights at Creil, and his physicians, who were giving him various medicines, which, however, did him little good. At this time, there was a most learned physician in France, who had not his equal anywhere, a friend of the lord de Coucy, and born on his lands. His name was master William de Harsleley : he had fixed his residence in the city of Laon, which he preferred to any other. On first hearing of the king's illness and the cause of it, know-

knowing, as he thought, the king's constitution, he said,—‘ This disorder of the king proceeds from the alarm in the forest, and by inheriting too much of his mother's weak nerves.’ These words were carried to the lord de Coucy, at that time in Paris with the duke of Orleans and the king's uncles. The whole of the council, and the principal barons and prelates of the realm, were there assembled to consult on the government of the kingdom during the king's illness, and until he should be perfectly restored; and whether the duke of Orleans, or his uncles, or all three should have the regency. They were upwards of fifteen days before they could agree: at last, it was thought advisable, from the youth of the duke of Orleans, which made him unfit to bear so great a weight, that the two uncles of the king should govern the kingdom; but that the duke of Burgundy should be the principal; and that the duchess of Burgundy should remain with the queen and be respected as second to her in rank.

CHAP. VI.

THE LORD DE COUCY INTRODUCES THE GREAT PHYSICIAN, MASTER WILLIAM DE HARSELEY, TO CURE THE KING OF FRANCE.—VARIOUS CAUSES ASSIGNED FOR THIS DISORDER.

THE lord de Coucy was not unmindful of what he had heard of master William de Harseley. He spoke of him to the king's uncles, and mentioned his learning and success, and that it would be proper he should try his skill to recover the king. The dukes of Berry and Burgundy listened to it, and sent for him. On his arrival at Paris, he first waited on the lord de Coucy, with whom he was very intimate, and he introduced him to the king's uncles, saying, 'Here is master William de Harseley of whom I spoke to you.' The two dukes received him kindly, and made him welcome. They then ordered him to visit the king at Creil, and remain with him until he should have restored him to health. Master William, in consequence of these orders from the dukes, set out from Paris in good array, as was becoming him, and arrived at Creil, where he established himself near the king's person, and took the lead over the other physicians, undertaking to make a cure; for he saw it was to be done, since the disorder was caused by weakness of nerves, from the sudden alarm of the appearance of the mad-

madman, and then by the noise from the blow on the page's helmet; and he was very anxious to restore the king to health.

News of the king of France's illness was carried far and near, and, however others may have been grieved at it, you may suppose that the duke of Brittany and sir Peter de Craon were not much affected: they soon dried their tears, for he was pursuing them with bitter hatred.

Pope Boniface and his cardinals at Rome were rejoiced on hearing it. They assembled in full consistory, and said the worst of their enemies, meaning the king of France, was severely chastised, when God had thus deprived him of his senses; and that this punishment had been inflicted by Heaven, for having so strenuously supported the anti-pope of Avignon; that this chastisement should make him attend more to his own kingdom, and that their cause would now be better.

The pope and cardinals at Avignon, considering the great support the king had given them, had cause for alarm; but they shewed none for the honour of the king and realm. They said among themselves, that the king was young and wilful, and had, by his own fault, brought on him this disorder; that those about his person had allowed him to act too much as he pleased; and that he had exerted himself in different excesses, and by riding post night and day, and had laboured unreasonably, in mind and body, on matters that should have been done by his ministers and not by himself; and that, if he had been properly and soberly

soberly educated by the advice of his uncles, this unfortunate illness would never have happened.

They added, that, when he was on his journey to Languedoc, he had promised, on the word of a king, and swore likewise on his faith, that he would raise a sufficient force to destroy the anti-pope and his cardinals at Rome, and put an end to the schism and troubles of the church; but he had done nothing, and thus forfeited his oath and promise, by which he has angered God, who, to correct him, punishes him with this rod of frenzy. It therefore behoves us, when he shall have recovered his health, which may soon happen, to send properly instructed legates to remonstrate with him on this breach of promise, in order that, through our neglect, he may not be forgetful of it.

Such was the language at Avignon between the pope and cardinals, who agreed that this disorder had been incurred by his own negligence and fault; but they greatly blamed those of his council and household for not having better attended to him. Many others, in France, did the same.

In a church at Haspres, in Hainault, dependant on the abbey of Saint Vaast at Arras, lies the canonized body of Saint Aquaire, in a rich shrine of silver. This saint is celebrated for the cures he has performed on those afflicted with madness, and on that account is much visited from all parts. To pay due respect to the saint, there was made a figure of wax resembling the king, which was sent thither with a large wax taper, and offered, with

much devotion, to the shrine of the saint, that he might pray to God to alleviate this cruel affliction of the king. A similar offering was made to Saint Hermier in Rouais who has the reputation of curing madness, and wherever there were saints that were supposed to have efficacy, by their prayers to God, in such disorders, thither were sent offerings from the king, with much ceremony and devotion.

When this event was known in England, the king and lords were greatly concerned thereat. The duke of Lancaster especially testified his sorrow, and said to the knights near his person,— ‘On my faith, it is a great pity, for he shewed himself a man of courage, with strong inclinations to do good. When I took leave of him at Amiens, he said,—‘ Fair cousin of Lancaster, I earnestly entreat you will exert yourself to the utmost of your power that there may be a solid peace between the king of England, your nephew, and myself; and between our kingdoms: we may then march a powerful army against this Amurat, who has conquered the kingdom of Armenia from its lawful monarch, and who intends to destroy all Christendom, that we may exalt our faith, as we are bounden so to do.’ ‘Now,’ added the duke, ‘there is an end to this, for he will never again have that confidence he before enjoyed put in him.’ ‘That is true enough,’ said those who heard him, ‘and the kingdom of France seems likely to fall into much trouble.’

CHAP. VII.

THE DUKES OF BERRY AND BURGUNDY RUIN
 THOSE WHO HAD BEEN THE CONFIDENTIAL
 SERVANTS OF THE KING.—THE DUKE OF BUR-
 GUNDY TREATS RUDELY THE CONSTABLE DE
 CLISSON.

SUCH were the conversations of lords in different countries on hearing of the king of France's illness, who remained confined in the castle of Creil, under the care of the four knights, and master William de Harseley, who had the sole management of him: none were allowed to speak with the king, nor even enter the castle, but such as had his permission, or were acting under his orders.

At times, the dukes of Orleans and Bourbon came to visit the king, and see how he was going on, but the dukes of Berry and Burgundy never left Paris. They had not as yet made any changes in the government, but they shortly intended doing so in regard to many who were not in their good graces, from their behaviour when in power, which was, as they thought, contradictory and presumptuous.

The duke of Berry said, that Clisson, la Riviere, le Mercier and le bêgue de Villaines, had, during their attendance on the king in Languedoc, caused his treasurer and faithful servant Bethisac to be dis-

gracefully punished with death, through envy and wickedness ; and that, in spite of any thing he could say or do, he could never get him out of their hands. Let them now beware of me, for the time shall come when I will repay them with the same coin, and struck from the same mint.'

The duke of Burgundy and those attached to him loved no better the above-named persons, who had governed the king ; for, whenever they wanted any thing at court, they were repulsed sharply enough, and very little done for them, of which they murmured and talked loudly behind their backs.

The duchess of Burgundy, who was a very unforgiving and haughty lady, resided at Paris with the queen, and had the supreme government of her and her household, so that no one was permitted to speak with the queen but through her permission. This lady hated with her whole heart sir Oliver de Clisson, on account of the duke of Brittany, who was nearly related to her. She frequently remonstrated with the duke of Burgundy, saying, that those who had supported sir Oliver de Clisson against so potent a prince as his cousin the duke of Brittany were very blame-worthy. The duke of Burgundy was cool and prudent, and saw far into the state of affairs and their consequences : he wished not to encourage any troubles in France, but to keep every one in good humour as long as it should be possible, and on this account had never opposed any measures of his late brother, Charles V. nor of his nephew, the present king. He therefore replied

replied thus gently to his wife : ‘Lady, it is good at all times to dissemble. The duke of Brittany, it is true, is a great prince, and an overmatch for the lord de Clisson. If I join the duke, and make myself openly one of his party, the kingdom would be dissatisfied, and not without reason; for the lord de Clisson would declare, and prove, that the whole haered our coufin the duke bears him is for having supported the interests of France, in which we have so large a share, and it is so believed throughout the realm. Hitherto I have had no cause whatever to incline me to the duke against the lord de Clisson. It therefore behoves me to dissemble my real sentiments, if I wish to preserve the favour of the king and country to whom I am bounden by every tie, which is not my case with regard to the duke of Brittany. It has happened that my lord the king is indisposed, and in an alarming state, as you know: this is very much against the lord de Clisson, and will be hurtful to all who advised him to undertake this expedition, and on which he was so obstinately bent, in spite of every thing my brother and myself could urge against it. The rod is already prepared with which they shall be punished, as you shall shortly witness or hear of; but have the goodness, at this moment, to have a little patience. Lady, lady, there is no season but what makes some return, nor any fortune stable, nor afflicted heart but is at times rejoiced, nor angered minds but have their revenge. Clisson, la Riviere, Montagu, le Mercier, de Villaines, and

others who have acted improperly will shortly be made to suffer for it.'

With such conversations did the duke and duchess of Burgundy amuse themselves; and not many days after this last, the dukes of Berry and Burgundy had a private conference. They said, 'it was now time to punish those who had dishonoured their nephew, the king, and who had led him to act according to their pleasure. We will begin, first, with the constable, for he is of the highest rank and greatest wealth: when he made his will a short time ago, on being wounded, he proved he had seventeen hundred thousand francs in money and moveables. How the devil could he have amassed such a sum? for the marriage of his daughter, with our cousin, John of Brittany, whom he ransomed from England, must have cost him, in the whole, two hundred thousand francs! But how shall we manage to begin on him, with any reasonable pretext? for he is strongly supported by our nephew, the duke of Orleans, and by many of the great barons of France. However, if we can but once lay hands on him, we will attack him by law, and the parliament at present is of our party.'

'That is true,' replied the duke of Burgundy; 'and the first time he comes to me, which he must do to-morrow on business, I will convince him, by the reception I give him, that he is not in my favour, and do you, brother of Berry, do the same when he comes to you.' 'That I will,' answered

sivered the duke of Berry, and with these words the conference ended.

The lord de Clisson, who thought not that he was moderately well in favour with the dukes of Berry and Burgundy, waited on the last, for business of his office. He had been much teized by many knights and squires, who were of the late expedition, and wanted money, for they had never received any thing : the chancellor of France and the treasurer had sent them to the constable to be paid. He came therefore one afternoon to the hôtel d'Artois, to remonstrate with the duke of Burgundy on this business, and nothing else, for he had already been dismissed from any share in the government.

When he arrived at the hôtel d'Artois, he entered the court with his attendants, who were not numerous, and dismounted. The constable ascended the stairs attended by only one squire, the others waiting for him in the court. He found two of the duke's knights in the hall, and demanded from them if the duke was disengaged, and if he could speak with him. ' Sir, we know not,' replied they ; ' but will soon inform you, if you will wait here.' They entered the duke's apartment, and found him unoccupied, chatting with a herald, returned from a grand feast in Germany. The knights interrupted the conversation, by saying, ' My lord, sir Oliver de Clisson is in the hall, and wishes to speak with you, if it be your pleasure.' ' In God's name,' replied the duke, ' let him come forward : we have at present leis-

sure to speak with him, and hear what he has to say.' One of the knights left the apartment, and called the constable, saying, 'Sir, come on: my lord sends for you.' The constable no sooner entered the room, than the duke changed colour, and repented having sent for him, although he was anxious to tell him his mind.

The constable took off his hood, and, bowing to the duke, said,—'I am come, my lord, to know how to act respecting the payment of the knights and squires who were of the late expedition, for my office is perpetually besieged by them; and, as you and my lord of Berry at present govern the kingdom, have the goodness to inform me.'

The duke of Burgundy angrily replied,—
 'Clisson, Clisson, you need not trouble yourself about the state of France; for, without your office, it will be perfectly well governed. In an evil hour have you interfered in it. How the devil can you have amassed such a sum as seventeen hundred thousand francs, which you declared yourself to be possessed of by your will? Neither my lord the king, my brother of Berry, nor myself, with all our power, have ever been able to collect such a sum. Quit my presence, and leave my house, and let me never see you again; for, if it were not from regard to my own honour, I would have your other eye put out.' At these words, the duke of Burgundy went away, leaving the lord de Clisson astonished. He quitted the apartment, with his head sunk down, and quite melan-

melancholy, without being attended by any one. Having crossed the hall, he descended into the court, mounted his horse, and departed with his people, taking a private way to his own hôtel, without saying a word.

CHAP. VIII.

SIR OLIVER DE CLISSON, AFTER THE HARSH ANSWER OF THE DUKE OF BURGUNDY, RETIRES TO MONTLHERY.—BEING PURSUED THITHER, HE HAS TIME TO MAKE HIS RETREAT TO CHATEAU JOSSELIN.

WHEN the lord de Clisson had entered his hôtel, he formed various plans in his own mind as to his future conduct: he foresaw that very shortly public affairs would be badly managed, and had no one to open his mind to on the subject, for the duke of Orleans was at Creil: indeed, had he been at Paris, he had no power to save or defend him. Suspecting, after what had passed, that the duke of Burgundy would arrest him, and force his hôtel, he determined not to wait the event, but ordered his most confidential servants to pack up all he should want, and, in the evening, set off from Paris, attended by only two persons.

He passed the gate of Saint Anthony, and rode to Charenton, where, crossing the Seine by the bridge, he continued his journey to his castle of

Mont-

Montlhery, seven leagues from Paris, where he remained until he heard other news.

The same day the duke of Burgundy had rebuffed the constable, he met the duke of Berry at the Louvre, on the affairs of the nation. He told his brother of Berry how he had spoken to sir Oliver de Clisson, who answered, ‘ You have well done. We must, by some means or other, lay hold of him ; for in truth, Clisson, le Mercier, la Riviere and Montagu have plundered the kingdom ; but the time is now come when they must make ample restitution, and their heads ought to pay the forfeit also.’

I know not the particular reasons, but it is a fact, that the day the constable left Paris, Montagu did the same, and also by the gate of Saint Anthony. He took the road for Troyes in Champagne, but said he would not stop anywhere until he was arrived at Avignon, whither he had already sent the greater part of his wealth. He had left a sufficiency with his wife to maintain her state handsomely ; for he foresaw, since the king was deprived of his senses, public affairs would go ill under the government of the dukes of Berry and Burgundy, who never spoke to him.

Sir John le Mercier would have been glad to have done the same, had he been able ; but he had been put under an arrest, and nothing could come in or go out of his house without the knowledge of his guards. What he had before laid by in a place of security was of the greatest service to him at a proper opportunity, for all that was known to

to be his was claimed and seized by the two regents. He was afterwards committed a prisoner to the castle of the Louvre, as was in like manner le bêgue de Villaines, count de Ribadéo in Spain.

They sent to the hôtel of Montagu, but found no one, nor could they learn whither he was gone, and with this they were forced to be satisfied. Inquiries were made if sir Oliver de Clifson were in Paris, and orders were sent to his hôtel for him to surrender himself a prisoner in the Louvre: but no person was at his hôtel except the house-steward, who could not give any intelligence concerning him.

Two days passed before it was known that he was in his castle of Montlhery. The two dukes, impatient to lay hold on him, ordered instantly Barrois des Barres, sir John de Châteaumorant, the lord de Coucy and sir William de la Trimouille to collect three hundred lances, and said to them,—‘ March with this force without delay to Montlhery, invest the town and castle, and do not leave it until you shall bring us Clifson dead or alive.’

The knights obeyed, as was their duty, for the government of the kingdom was now in the hands of these two dukes, and they left Paris with their three hundred lances, not all at once, but in five separate bodies, that their departure might be the less noticed. God, however, assisted the constable; and he had such good friends among this armament, that he was punctually informed of its departure.

departure, and the hour it would arrive, so that he had full leisure to take proper measures not to suffer from it. He and his people left Montlhery, and by travelling through bye roads, over heaths, and avoiding all inclosed towns or cities, arrived safely in Brittany, and entered his castle called château Josselin, which was well provided with all things, where he remained to wait other intelligence.

Barrois des Barres and the other knights put their orders into execution, took possession of the town of Monthery, and surrounded the castle. They remained thus one night, imagining the constable was within, but he was not, as you have heard. On the morrow, while they were preparing for the assault, the servants in the castle came out to know what they were about. The knights said they wanted sir Oliver de Clisson, and that was the object of their coming. The servants in guard of the castle replied, that the lord de Clisson had left it four days ago, and offered to open every part of it for them to search. The knights and squires entered the castle armed from head to foot, as if for instant combat, for fear of being surprised by treachery or an ambuscade. They, however, found that the servants had told them the truth; for they minutely searched every part of it, without discovering any traces of the lord de Clisson. After this, they marched away on their return to Paris, when they related to those who had sent them all they had done.

CHAP. IX.

THE LORD DE LA RIVIERE, THE PRINCIPAL
MINISTER OF THE KING OF FRANCE BEFORE
HIS ILLNESS, IS MADE PRISONER BY ORDERS
OF THE DUKES OF BERRY AND BURGUNDY.—
THE DUCHESS OF BERRY INTERCEDES FOR
HIM WITH HER LORD.

THE dukes of Berry and Burgundy, finding that the constable had escaped, were much vexed; while, on the contrary, the dukes of Orleans and Bourbon rejoiced at it. ‘Now,’ said the duke of Burgundy, ‘he shews by his flight that he suspects us; but, though he has fled, he is not yet acquitted. We will force him hastily to return, or he shall lose every thing we can lay our hands on. Even this shall not free him from some heavy charges which only wait for trial, to prove him guilty and deserving punishment. If the great, the powerful and the wicked be not chastised, justice will not be equally dealt, and the lower ranks and the poor will with truth be discontented. Justice ought to be dealt out without discrimination to all, that every one may take example.’

Such was the discourse of the duke of Burgundy; but the lord de Clisson was safe in his castle of Josselin, in Brittany, well provided with every thing to defend it, and to hold out a long siege.

The

The day that Barrois des Barres returned to Paris, to tell his lords that sir Oliver de Clifson was not at Montlhery, the two dukes said,—
 ‘ Barrois, set out to-morrow very early, and ride to Auneau. We have heard the lord de la Riviere is there. Demand to see him from us and from the council, and manage so that you give a good account of him when we shall require it from you.’ Sir Barrois, having promised obedience, rode the next morning with his men at arms to Auneau, near to Chartres. It has a handsome castle, which the lord de la Riviere received in marriage with his wife the lady of Auneau, and he had greatly improved both the castle and lands. He was much beloved by his vassals, whom he treated with affectionate care. The commissioners sent by the dukes, on their arrival at Auneau, executed their orders on the lord de la Riviere, whom they found with his lady and children. He was expecting such a message, for he had already learnt that sir John le Mercier and the count de Ribadéo were in prison, and that the constable had fled from Montlhery to a more distant and secure castle.

Those who had brought him this intelligence said,—‘ Sir, save yourself; for the envious, who at this present govern, are against you, and fortune has turned with them.’ To this he had replied,—
 ‘ Here and every where else I am in the power of God: if I fly or hide, I should accuse myself as guilty of crimes of which I feel myself incapable and innocent. God has given me all I possessed, and he may take it from me whenever he pleases:

to

to his will I submit. I have faithfully and loyally served the late king, of happy memory, as well as the present king. My services have been well known to both, and they have royally rewarded them. I feel bold enough, from what by their commands I have done for the good of the kingdom, to stand the judgment of the parliament of Paris ; and, if they shall find in my whole conduct any thing worthy of blame, let me be punished.'

Such was the declaration of the lord de la Riviere to his wife and his friends, before the commissioners from the regents came to Auneau. On their arrival, his servants said,—‘ My lord, here are such and such persons, with a large force, who want to enter the castle : what do you say ? shall we open the gates ?’ ‘ Why not ?’ he replied : ‘ they are very welcome.’ On saying this, he went to meet them, and received every one most graciously, and in conversing together they all entered the hall of the castle of Auneau. After a short pause, sir Barrois des Barres, a gallant and courteous knight, with much vexation, arrested the lord de la Riviere, according to the orders he had received, which he was bound to execute. The lord de la Riviere held him excused and immediately obeyed his summons ; for he neither could nor would otherwise act by disputing it ; and remained a prisoner in his own castle of Auneau.

You may imagine his lady was in great anguish when she saw fortune thus adverse to her lord, and she still more dreaded the conclusion.

The lord de la Riviere was not long a prisoner

in

in his own castle, before he was sent for by those who ruled the temporality and spirituality of France (for the person who signed himself pope Clement, held all his power in that country through the good will of these dukes) to Paris, where he was confined in the prisons of the Louvre. Many in France were afflicted at this, but they dared only speak of it in private. They were indifferent as to sir John le Mercier, but the lord de la Riviere had been courteous, debonair, and patient in hearing poor people, and such as were not of rank, to attend his public audiences. It was reported in Paris that they were to be beheaded; and it was whispered slanderously, to ruin their popularity, that they had been traitors to the crown, and plundered the treasury of great wealth, with which they had kept up their state, and built houses and fine castles, while poor knights and quires, who had exposed their lives in arms for the service of the realm, and sold their inheritances for subsistence, could not obtain any presents, for a long time past, from sir Oliver de Giffon, the lord de la Riviere, sir John le Mercier, or from Montagu, who had fled.

Their numerous enemies, who were in great strength, declared they deserved to die, which put them in great risk. They urged, as a crime against them, that they had advised the king to go to Mis, and thence to Brittany, and had, by poison'd liquors which they gave him to drink, brought on this frenzy; and it was currently reported, that the king's physicians, who had the care

care of his health, were not, in any way, permitted to have their will, nor was their advice followed.

So much was said against these two, that the lord de la Riviere and sir John le Mercier were removed from the Louvre and delivered over to the provost of the Châtelet, and confined in the castle of St. Anthony, under the guard of the viscount d'Achy, at that time the governor. On this removal, though the common report ran that they were to be put to death, in truth they were never condemned; nor could those by whom they had been examined, ever in their consciences find them guilty of death. They were, however, daily attacked by some, who said, 'Take heed to your souls, for your bodies are already disposed of: you are both condemned to have your heads cut off.' In this distressing state they were kept for some time; but the bëgue de Villaines, a great knight and valiant man at arms, from the country of Beauce, inculpated in the same accusations, had many friends, who pleaded effectually in his favour, and he was freed from prison with a full acquittal. On his leaving the prison, he was told by his relations, sir Barrois des Barres and others, to prepare to set out for Castille, where in future he must reside, on the handsome inheritance he gained by his marriage with the countess de Ribadéo.

He followed the advice that had been given him, and speedily packed up all he wanted, and set out for Castille, leaving his two friends in prison, and in daily peril of losing their lives. All the property, moveable and immovable, of sir John le

Mercier, that was in France, and could be laid hold of, was confiscated and given to others. His fine house at Pont à Louvion*, in the diocese of Laon, that had cost him such immense sums, was seized and given to the lord de Coucy with all its estates, manors and dependancies. I am ignorant if this was done at his request, but he possessed it, and his heirs afterwards.

The regents treated the lord de la Riviere very cruelly. They confiscated all his estates, as well what had descended to him as those he had purchased, and all his moveables wherever they could be found. The lady, his wife, had, however, reserved to her use all the domain of Auneau, and whatever else she had inherited from her family, by father or mother. She had a young and genteel daughter, of ten years old, who had been betrothed to James de Chastillon, son and heir to sir Hugh de Chastillon, who had formerly been master of the crois bows of France : he was already in possession of large estates, and in the expectation of more. He had made several excursions with his intended father-in-law, the lord de la Riviere ; but, notwithstanding this, the regents would break off the intended marriage in spite of the young man. This connection was put an end to, and he married elsewhere, according to the pleasure of the dukes of Berry and Burgundy, and

* Pont à Louvion,—it is in the MSS. Pont-Aubumen, and Pont à Lonniow Q. if not Pont à Nouvion. There are three villages of that name in the election of Laon.

the lord de la Trimouille, who took the management of the business.

The lord de la Riviere had likewise a son, a squire, who was his heir, married to the only daughter of the lord de Dampmartin, who was not likely to have more children, and this daughter was his heiress. The regents wanted likewise to break off this marriage, and unite her more nobly; but the count de Dampmartin, like an honourable man, stepped forward, and said,—‘ That as long as the son of the lord de la Riviere lived, his daughter should have no other husband; and, if violence were used to shorten his days, his daughter should remain a widow, and he would so strongly settle his property, that those who might wish to gain it by fraud or otherwise would find themselves disappointed.’

When they saw the firmness of the count de Dampmartin, and that he would not give up his son-in-law, they left him quiet, and the marriage remained good; but the first I mentioned was set aside by an absolution from pope Clement, who was forced to give it whether he would or not; for he had no power over the realm of France, but what the two dukes were pleased to allow him, so greatly was the church lowered and hurt by the disgraceful schism, and by the conduct of those who ought to have ruled it better.

Many in France, and in other countries, acquitted the lord de la Riviere from all blame, but their excusing him was of no avail; for, although his innocence was as clear as the day, no one dared

to speak in his behalf, but that courageous young lady the duchess of Berry.

Too often had that good lady cast herself at her lord's feet, saying, with uplifted hands,—‘ Ah, my lord, you allow yourself to be swayed wrongly and sinfully, by the envious and disappointed, who poison your mind with tales against this valiant knight, and virtuous man, the lord de la Riviere. They accuse him unjustly, and no one dares to say a word in his defence. I wish you therefore to know, that, if he be put to death, I shall never again taste happiness, but remain all my days in sorrow and affliction. He is, whoever may say the contrary, a most loyal and prudent knight. Ah, my lord, you little remember the handsome services he has done you, nor the pains and difficulty he had to encounter when he accomplished our marriage. I do not say this as pretending to have been worth the trouble, for I am but a poor lady in comparison to you; but you, who were so anxious to have me, had to deal with a hard and cunning lord, the late count de Foix, in whose wardship I then was; and, if it had not been for the persuasive manners of the lord de la Riviere, I should have never been your duchess, but settled in England; for the duke of Lancaster solicited me for the earl of Derby, and the count de Foix inclined more to him than to you. Most dear sir, you ought not to be forgetful of these things, for you know what I say is true. I therefore most humbly entreat that you would have compassion on the gallant knight who so courteously conducted your

your busines\$, in regard to me, that he suffer nei-
ther in life nor limb.'

The duke of Berry, thus attacked by his young and handsome wife, whom he doated upon, and feeling that all she had said was true, was much so-
ttened in his hatred to the lord de la Riviere ; and
to appease his lady, who he saw was in earnest, re-
plied,—‘Lady, as God may save my soul, I would
rather have paid twenty thousand francs, than that
la Riviere should have misconducted himself to-
wards the crown of France. Before this indis-
position of the king, I loved him well, and con-
sidered him as a prudent and valiant knight. Since,
however, you thus anxiously interest yourself for
him, I will abate my anger ; and from your en-
treties and solicitations he shall fare the better.
I will exert my power to the utmost, and do more
for your prayers than if all France united had pe-
titioned me in his behalf.’

‘My lord,’ answered the lady, ‘please God, I
shall see the effects of it. You will do a good and
charitable act ; for I believe there is not one, beside
myself, that has spoken in his favour.’ ‘You say
truly,’ replied the duke ; ‘but when you so warmly
take up the matter, it is fully sufficient.’

Thus was the duchess contented with the answers
of the duke ; and when he and the duke of Bur-
gundy, with their councils, met on the business,
there was much altercation. There is not a doubt
but, if this virtuous lady had not interfered, he
would have been put to death. From affection to
her, it was otherwise ; and sir John le Mercier

was fortunate in being the companion of the lord de la Riviere, and implicated in the same charges, for they could not in conscience have executed one without the other.

Notwithstanding this delay, they did not feel perfectly secure in prison, for they knew they had many enemies, who were now in power, and angry (though they were forced to abide by it) that they had not sooner been punished. Sir John le Mercier, during his confinement in the Bastille, was in such continual grief and tears that he nearly lost his sight. It was melancholy indeed to hear the bitterness of his lamentations,

CHAP. X.

AFTER MANY ADJOURNMENTS AND DELAYS, THE CONSTABLE DE CLISSON IS, BY JUDGMENT OF THE COURT OF PARLIAMENT OF PARIS, BANISHED THE REALM OF FRANCE, CONDEMNED TO PAY A FINE OF ONE HUNDRED THOUSAND FRANCS, AND DECLARED INCAPABLE OF HOLDING THE OFFICE OF CONSTABLE OF FRANCE.

DURING the confinement of the two knights in prison, where they remained upwards of a year, uncertain what the conclusion would be, the lord de Clisson was attacked every way, to degrade his

his honour and deprive him of his office. They were more desirous to lay hold of him than any others of the late ministry, but he took good care to prevent it. He was wise in so doing; for if he had been arrested, every thing was prepared for his execution the moment he should be condemned, without the smallest hope of mercy, to please his adversary, the duke of Brittany, who had never done any good to France.

When the regents found he had escaped, they resolved to proceed in a different manner. It was ordered, that he should be summoned by the court of parliament of Paris to appear before it, and answer such charges as should be made against him, under pain of being dishonoured and banished from France.

Commissioners were sent after him into Brittany, by the chamber of parliament, to summon and arrest him. They acquitted themselves well, so far as going into Brittany and demanding at all the towns and castles belonging to sir Oliver de Clisson where he was to be found, saying,—‘ We are sent by the king and council to speak with my lord the constable: tell us how we can see him, that we may perform our message.’

The inhabitants of the towns or castles dependant on the lord de Clisson answered, as they had been tutored to do,—‘ Gentlemen, you are very welcome: if we wanted to speak with our lord the constable, we wou'd go to such a place, where we should find him without fail.’ Thus were the com-
mis-

missioners sent from town to town, asking after sir Oliver de Clisson, but without ever finding him, or having any other answers. At length, being tired of the pursuit, they returned to Paris, and related their ill success, and the tricks the constable's valets had played them. Those who had accused him, and wished his condemnation, would not that he had acted otherwise, for now they said, they would have instant judgment, and he should be treated according to his deserts.

They publicly summoned, by order of parliament, sir Oliver de Clisson in all legal form, allowing the usual interval between each summons, to prevent those attached to him from saying that hatred or malice had outstripped justice. After every adjournment was completed, without any intelligence received from him, and after he had been summoned first at the door of the chamber of parliament, then publicly at the gates and on the steps of the palace, with every usual solemnity, without any answer being returned, a most cruel sentence was passed by the court.

He was banished the kingdom of France for a false and wicked traitor to the crown, condemned to pay a fine of one hundred thousand marcs of silver, for the extortions which he had fraudulently and wickedly committed in former times, as well in the office of constable as in the exchequer and elsewhere, and to be deprived for ever of the office of constable of France.

The duke of Orleans was invited by the court to
be

be present when this sentence was passed, but he would not, and excused himself. The dukes of Berry and Burgundy were there, with a great many of the barons of France.

Now observe the works of Fortune, how firm and steady they are, when such a valiant and good knight, who had laboured so successfully for the honour of France was thus maliciously degraded in honour and hurt in his fortune. He was lucky in not obeying any of the summons, for, had he come, they would have disgracefully put him to death; nor could the duke of Orleans have saved him, for, if he had interceded for him, no attention would have been paid to it. You may suppose that the duke of Brittany and sir Peter de Craon, who were strongly connected with each other, were much rejoiced at this; but they were vexed the constable had not borne company with the lord de la Riviere and sir John le Mercier.

This sentence made a great noise in France and elsewhere. Some pitied him, and said in secret that he had been unjustly treated: others opposed it, saying it was fortunate he had not been lain hold of and hanged, for he was deserving of it. ‘Our regents,’ they added, ‘who are well acquainted with his manner of life, have not been to blame in suffering him to be thus treated. How the devil could he have laid by such a sum as a million and a half of florins? It could not have been by conquests in war, but from pillage and robbery, and

and from the pay of poor knights and squires, as is well known at the chancery and treasury, where it is all written down. In the expeditions to Flanders; he raised and received large sums of money, as well as in that which the king made into Germany. All the taxes for the war, and the payment of the men at arms, passed through his hands. He paid himself and others as he pleased, keeping the better part, without any one daring to say a word against it.'

In such terms was sir Oliver de Clisson accused behind his back ; and the proverb says truly, that ' those whom necessity forces to sell have never a fair offer.'

The duke of Brittany caused it to be rumoured throughout his country, that whenever the dukes of Berry and Burgundy should please, he could easily reduce the lord de Clisson to the lowest state ; but at the moment he left him undisturbed, to see what turn affairs would take, for he expected, from the measures then pursuing, the lord de Clisson must be deprived of the constableship.

The duke of Brittany and sir Peter de Craon were thus suddenly relieved from all anxiety by the favour of dame Fortune, who, ever in motion, exalts those who least expect it, and tumbles others into the dirt from the top of her wheel.

Sir Oliver de Clisson, the lord de la Riviere and sir John le Mercier were principally accused of being the authors of the king's illness ; and it

was

was commonly reported by those who hated them, and wished their death, that they had poisoned the king. Now consider how little there was in this charge, or how little probability of their attempting such an act, who were sure of being persecuted if any accident happened to the king, and of course would have been the most eager to have preserved him in health. But nothing was believed which they urged in their defence, as you already know. The lord de la Riviere and sir John le Mercier were for a long time imprisoned in the Bastille, and in great danger of being publicly beheaded. It would undoubtedly have been done, if the king had not very opportunely recovered his health, and had it not been for the strong and repeated intercessions the duchess of Berry made for the lord de la Riviere.

The lord de Clisson resided in Brittany; and a severe warfare was kept up between him and the duke, which cost many lives, as will be related hereafter;

CHAP. XI.

KING CHARLES RECOVERS HIS SENSES THROUGH
THE MERCY OF GOD, AND THE DILIGENT
ATTENTION OF HIS PHYSICIAN, MASTER WIL-
LIAM DE HARSELEY.

THE disorder, which beset the king on his journey to Brittany, greatly affected all his subjects, and they naturally felt for their king, who, before this illness, was very popular with all ranks. Being the chief, every part of the government suffered; for, in like manner, when the head of a man is sick, his other members are not painless. No one ventured to talk openly of his indisposition, which was concealed as much as it could be. Indeed, it was perfectly unknown to the queen until she was recovered from her lying in; and I believe this time she was brought to bed of a daughter.

Master William de Harsley, who had the king under his care, resided quietly with him at Creil, and was very attentive to him, which gained him honour and profit, for by little and little he recovered for him his health. He first got rid of the fever and great heat he complained of, and then restored to him his appetite, sleep, and his recollection of things about him. Until he was strong enough to bear removal for change of air,

he

he allowed him to ride, hunt, and amuse himself with hawking.

On the news of the king's recovery being spread abroad, the whole kingdom of France was rejoiced, and most heartily and sincerely were thanksgivings offered up to God for having restored the king to his senses and memory. During his residence at Creil, he demanded to see the queen and his son : she came thither, and brought the dauphin. The king received them very kindly ; and thus by degrees, through the mercy of God, was he restored to health.

Master William de Harseley, seeing him in so fair a way, was in high spirits, and not without reason, for he had performed an astonishing cure. He now gave him up to the care of his brother, the duke of Orleans, and his uncles, the dukes of Berry, Burgundy and Bourbon, saying to them,-- ‘ Thanks to God, the king is now well : I deliver him up to you ; but, henceforward, you must carefully avoid angering or vexing him, for as yet his nerves have not quite recovered their strength, though they will daily get better. Amusements and relaxation from the fatigues of business will be of service to him, and, above all, he must not weary himself too much with his ministers or council ; for his head will continue some time weak and delicate, as he has been much pulled down and shattered by this indisposition.’

Having consulted together, they resolved to retain master William de Harseley at such an ample salary as should satisfy him ; for it is the object of all

all medical men to gain large salaries, and as much profit as possible, from the lords and ladies who call for their aid. It was therefore proposed to him to remain with the king; but he excused himself, saying, ‘that he was old and weakly; that the manner of living at court would not agree with his years, and that he must immediately return to his nurfling at home.’ When they saw he was determined in his refusal, they pressed him no further.

They gave him permission to depart, and, on his taking leave, presented him with one thousand crowns of gold, and an order for four horses on the post-masters whenever he should please to come to court. I believe he never returned; for he continued in the city of Laon, where he died very rich, possessed of thirty thousand francs. He was the most niggardly man of his time: his whole pleasure was amassing money, and never spending a farthing at home, but eating and drinking abroad wherever he could. With such rods are physicians corrected.

CHAP. XII.

THE TRUCE IS PROLONGED BETWEEN FRANCE AND ENGLAND.—THE VISCOUNT DE CHATELON DOES HOMAGE FOR THE COUNTY OF FOIX TO THE KING OF FRANCE.

TO continue this noble and pleasant history, undertaken at the request and pleasure of that liberal and potent prince, my very dear lord and patron, Guy de Chastillon, count de Blois, lord of Avesnes, Chimay, Beaumont, Schoenhoven and Turgow. I John Froissart, priest and chaplain to my very dear lord before named, and at the time treasurer and canon of Chimay and Lille in Flanders, set myself to work at my forge, to produce new and noble matter relative to the wars between France and England and their allies, as clearly appears from the various treaties which are of this date, and which excellent materials, through the grace of God, I shall work upon as long as I live; for the more I labour at it, the more it delights me, just as a gallant knight or squire at arms, who loves his profession, the longer he continues it, so much the more delectable it appears.

You have had it before related in these chronicles, that a truce had been agreed on for three years at Leulinghen, between France and England; that ambassadors from France, namely the count de Saint Pol and the lord de Châteaumorant, had brought

brought the papers signed and sealed from England ; and that, since then, the lord de Château-morant and sir Taupin de Cantemelle had accompanied the dukes of Lancaster and York from the conferences at Amiens to London, to learn the intentions of the king and parliament of England, in regard to the advances which had been made at Amiens towards a solid peace between the two nations, subject, however, to the consent of England, which had been reserved in the treaty by the dukes of Lancaster and York.

The French knights had returned to France, for they were told nothing could be done in the matter until the meeting of the parliament, which was appointed to be holden at Westminster at Michaelmas : that then the affair would be discussed, and they should have an answer. When it was known in England how grievously the king of France was afflicted, the business was much retarded. Nevertheless, the king and the duke of Lancaster were desirous of peace between England and France, and, had it depended on them, it would have been concluded, but it was not so, for the commons of England preferred war to peace, saying, ‘ that war with France was more beneficial to them than otherwise.’ This was also the opinion of Thomas duke of Gloucester, constable of England, who was very popular throughout the country. He inclined for war, as did all the young men who were anxious to signalize themselves in arms ; but his brother, the duke of Lancaster, as the oldest, and most powerful,

powerful, took the lead, and said, ‘the war had lasted long enough between France and England, and that a good peace, if properly attended to, would be very welcome to all parties, who had suffered greatly from the long state of warfare.’ The duke added, ‘that holy Christendom was in danger from Bajazet, who was in great force on the frontiers of Hungary, sorely oppressing that country; and that was the proper theatre for all young bachelors who wished to try their skill in arms.’

Let us weigh well these words of the duke of Lancaster, which were offered with the best intentions; for he had many times invaded France, and overrun that country with small gain. He had undergone great bodily fatigue; and, though he burnt and destroyed the flat country, it was almost as soon recovered again from the damages it had suffered. He said that this war led to no good end, but, if continued, must be pushed forward with vigour, and the slightest reverse might be attended with the worst consequences. He likewise perceived the king was more desirous of peace than war.

I, the author of this history, know not how to determine who was in the right, or who in the wrong; but it was said the reason of the duke of Lancaster’s conduct was that he had married his two daughters in Castille and Portugal, and therefore he was desirous of peace. His son in law, the king of Castille, was young, and, to prevent any troubles from his grandees, and in order that

he might reign quietly, it was necessary there should be such a peace with France as the English could not infringe. Should they do so, the French would instantly fall on Castille ; for they had free entrances thither, through the kingdom of Arragon, of which the lady Jolande de Bar, a French woman, was queen, and who governed that kingdom as well as Catalonia, or through the countries of Béarn and the Basques ; for the viscount de Châteaubon, the heir to the late count de Foix, had sworn and sealed to grant this permission, when required by the king of France.

The French had, therefore, several entrances to Castille, without danger of opposition from the king of Navarre, who would not willingly anger his cousin-german the king of France. His brother, sir Peter de Navarre, was beside at the court of France, and would instantly soften any disputes that should arise between the king of France and his brother of Navarre ; for he was a good Frenchman, and never acted but for the mutual interest of the two kings.

The duke of Lancaster was fully aware of all the consequences of war, and frequently remonstrated on the subject with his son, Henry earl of Derby, who, though young, had an understanding and prudence that seemed likely to produce perfection. This earl of Derby had four fine sons, Henry, John, Humphrey and Thomas, and two daughters, by Mary de Bohun, daughter to the earl of Hereford and Northampton, constable of England,

England, and possessed in her right very large estates.

The conclusion of the matter respecting peace, which was long discussed in the parliament held at Westminster of prelates, noblemen and citizens from the cities and principal towns, was, that a truce should take place between England, France, and their respective allies, by sea and land, to last from Michaelmas to Saint John Baptist's day, and one year longer. Those who had been sent by the king of France carried back the articles of the truce properly signed and sealed, and the agreement was well observed by all parties.

The health of the king of France had been so exceedingly weakened by his late illness that his council knew not to whom to apply for advice; for the physician who had before attended, master William de Harfeley, was dead. He had, however, given the king, before he left him, several good recipes which he had used, and had returned to Paris in the winter with very good health, to the great joy of his family and the whole commonalty of France, with whom he was very popular.

The queen accompanied him from Creil to Paris, where they resided at the hôtel de Saint Pol. At times he went to the Louvre, but for the most part staid at the hôtel de Saint Pol; and, during the long winter nights, there were carolings, dancings and other amusements, in the presence of the king, queen, duchess of Berry,

duchess of Orleans and other ladies, who thus passed the winter nights.

At this season, the viscount de Châteaubon came to Paris, to do homage to the king for the county of Foix, which he inherited as legal heir to Gaston de Foix, and which was a fief dependant on France. Béarn is an independant state, and the lords of it owe service to none other lord but God, notwithstanding the claims the late prince of Wales, of happy memory, urged against Gaston de Foix, the late lord of Béarn. The prince pretended it was dependant on Aquitane, but the count de Foix denied the fact. To say the truth, all these claims of the prince were instigated through the count John d'Armagnac, as has been already told, so that I shall now pass the matter over.

When the viscount de Châteaubon, whom henceforward I shall call count de Foix, came to Paris, he brought a cousin with him, a bastard-son of the late count, called Evan de Foix, a handsome and accomplished knight, whom his late father would have willingly made his heir, with his brother Graciens, that was now with the king of Navarre, but the barons of Béarn would not consent to it. The matter, therefore, remained unsettled, for the count, as you have seen, died suddenly. On sir Evan being introduced to the king, he took a great liking to him, for he was wonderfully handsome and well made; he was besides of the same age with the king; and the affairs of the viscount de Châteaubon were benefited by this friendship, as they were the more speedily

speedily concluded. The viscount returned home; but sir Evan remained at court, and was named by the king one of his knights of the bed-chamber, with twelve coursers at the charge of the crown.

CHAP. XVI.

THE KING OF FRANCE IS IN GREAT DANGER OF HIS LIFE AT A MASQUED DANCE OF MEN DRESSED LIKE SAVAGES.—POPE BONIFACE AND THE CARDINALS AT ROME SEND A LEARNED FRIAR TO THE KING.

NOT long after this, a marriage took place between a young squire of Vermandois and a damsel of the queen, both of the royal household. The court were much pleased at it, and the king resolved to keep their wedding feast at his expence. It was held at the hôtel of Saint Pol, and great crowds of lords attended; among whom were the dukes of Orleans, Berry, Burgundy, and their duchesses. The wedding-day was passed in dancing and joy. The king entertained at supper the queen in great state; and every one exerted himself to add to the gaiety, seeing how much delighted the king appeared.

There was, in the king's household, a Norman squire, called Hugonin de Gensay, a near relation of the bridegroom, who thought of the following

piece of pleasantry to amuse the king and ladies. This marriage was on a Tuesday before Candlemas-day, and he had in the evening provided six coats of linen covered with fine flax, the colour of hair. He dressed the king in one of them, the comte de Jouy, a young and gallant knight, in another, which became him well; sir Charles de Poitiers, son of the count de Valentinois, had the third; sir Evan de Foix the fourth; the son of the lord de Nantouillet had the fifth, and a young knight the sixth *.

When they were all thus dressed, by having the coats sewed round them, they appeared like savages, for they were covered with hair from head to foot. This masquerade pleased the king greatly, and he expressed his pleasure to his squire. It was so secretly contrived that no one knew any thing of the matter but the servants who had attended on them. Sir Evan de Foix, who seemed to have more foresight of what was to happen, said to the king,— ‘ Sire, command strictly that no one come near us with torches; for, if a spark fall on the coats we are dressed in, the flax will instantly take fire, and we must inevitably be burnt; take care, therefore, of what I say.’ ‘ Evan,’ replied the king, ‘ you speak well and wisely, and your advice shall be attended to.’ He then forbade his servants to follow, and, sending for one of the ser-

* In the History of France by Villaret, these masters were,—the king,—Hugues de Guissai,—le comte de Joigny,—Aymard de Poitiers, son of the count de Valentinois,—le baron de Foix,—Jean de Nantouillet.

jeants at arms that waited at the doors of the apartments, said to him, — ' Go to the room where the ladies are, and command, in the king's name, that all the torches be placed on one side of it; and that no person come near six savage men who are about to enter.'

The serjeant did as he had been ordered by the king, and the torch bearers withdrew on one side; and no one approached the dancers, so long as the savages staid in the room. The apartment was now clear of all but ladies, damsels, and knights and squires, who were dancing with them. Soon after, the duke of Orleans entered, attended by four knights, and six torches, ignorant of the orders that had been given, and of the entrance of the savages. He first looked at the dancing, and then took part himself, just as the king of France made his appearance, with five others dressed like savages, and covered with flax, to represent hair from head to foot. Not one person in the company knew them; and they were all fastened together, while the king led them dancing. On their entrance, every one was so occupied in examining them, that the orders about the torches were forgotten. The king, who was the leader, fortunately for him, quitted them, to shew himself to the ladies, as was natural to his youth, and, passing by the queen, placed himself near the duchess of Berry, who, though his aunt, was the youngest of the company. The duchess amused herself in talking with him, and endeavouring to find out who he was; but the king, rising up,

from his seat, would not discover himself. The duchess said, ‘ You shall not escape thus, for I will know your name.’

At this moment, a most unfortunate accident befel the others, through the youthful gaiety of the duke of Orleans, who, if he had foreseen the mischief he was about to cause, it is to be presumed would not, for any consideration, have so acted. He was very inquisitive in examining them, to find out who they were ; and, as the five were dancing, he took one of the torches from his servants, and, holding it too near their dresses, set them on fire. Flax, you know, is instantly in a blaze, and the pitch, with which the cloth had been covered to fasten the flax, added to the impossibility of extinguishing it. They were likewise chained together, and their cries were dreadful ; for, the fire was so strong, scarcely any dared approach. Some knights indeed did their utmost to disengage them, but the pitch burnt their hands very severely ; and they suffered a long time afterwards from it.

One of the five, Nantouillet, recollecting that the buttery was near, broke the chain, and, flying thither, flung himself into a large tub of water which was there, for washing dishes and plates. This saved him, or he would have been burnt to death like the others : but he was withal some time very ill. When the queen heard the cause of the cries, she was alarmed lest the king should be hurt, for he had told her he would be one of the six, and in her fright fainted and fell down : her

ladies

ladies and knights hastened to her assistance ; and, the confusion was so great, no one knew what to do. The duchess of Berry saved the king by throwing the train of her robe over him, and detaining him, for he wanted to quit her. ‘ Where are you going,’ said she : ‘ do not you see your companions are in a blaze ? Who are you ? for it is not now a time to keep it secret. He then named himself, saying, ‘ I am the king.’ ‘ Ah, my lord,’ replied the duchess, ‘ put on quickly another dress, and shew yourself to the queen, for she is very much distressed about you.’

The king, on this left the room, and, having thrown aside his mummery, dressed himself as fast as he could, and returned to the queen, who had been much comforted by the duchess of Berry. When the king had quitted her, she went to the queen and said, ‘ Madam, do not be alarmed for the king : you will shortly see him, for I have been talking with him.’ As she said this, the king appeared, and the queen trembled for joy : she was carried by her knights to her chamber, where the king attended and comforted her.

The bastard of Foix, when on fire, cried aloud, ‘ Save the king, save the king !’ who indeed was saved in the manner I have related. It was the providence of God that inspired him to leave his companions and converse with the ladies, for, had he remained with them, he must inevitably have been burnt to death.

This terrible accident happened about twelve o’clock at night, in the ball-room, at the hôtel de Saint

Saint Pol, and it was a most melancholy spectacle. Of the four that were on fire, two died on the spot : the other two, the bastard of Foix and the count de Jouy, were carried to their hôtels, and died two days afterward in great agonies.

Thus unfortunately did the wedding-feast end, although the married couple could no way be blamed. The duke of Orleans was alone in fault, who certainly intended not any harm when he held the torch so near them. His giddiness caused it ; and, when he witnessed how unlucky he had been, he said aloud,—‘ Listen to me all that can hear me. Let no one be blamed for this unfortunate accident but myself : what has been done was through my fault : but woe is me that it has happened ; and, had I foreseen the consequences, nothing on earth should have induced me to do it.’ The duke then followed the king, and made his excuses, which were accepted. This melancholy event happened on the Tuesday before Candlemas-eve, in the year of grace 1392 : it made a great noise in France and in other countries.

The dukes of Berry and Burgundy were not present when the maskers were set on fire, but were at their own hôtels, having taken leave of the king, queen and ladies. When on the morrow, it became public in Paris, the people wondered greatly, and said that God had a second time shewn his kind providence to the king, and that he ought now to put aside these childish things, and occupy himself more seriously ; for that he had too long played the boy, which was unbecoming a king
of

of France. The commonalty murmured among themselves, and said,—‘ What a narrow escape the king has had ! if he had been burnt like the others, which might easily have happened, what would have become of his uncles ? They may be assured not one of them would have escaped death, nor any knight found in Paris.’

The dukes of Berry and Burgundy, hearing of this language, were astonished and alarmed, and not without cause. They mounted their horses, and rode to the hôtel de Saint Pol to the king, and congratulated him on his escape. They found him still frightened, for he had not yet recovered the sense of the peril he had been in the preceding night. He told them his fair aunt of Berry had saved him from being burnt, but that he was exceedingly grieved for the melancholy end of the count de Jouy, sir Evan de Foix and sir Charles de Poitiers. His uncles consoled him, saying,— ‘ My lord, what is done cannot be recovered : you must forget their deaths, and render thanks to God for the miraculous escape you yourself have had ; for this event might have been nearly the death of the kingdom as well as your own. You may easily imagine what would have been the consequences, when the commons of Paris hold such language as has been reported to us ; and God knows, that if you had perished, they would have murdered us all. Make yourself ready to go in royal state, suitable to your rank, and ride in pilgrimage to the church of Nôtre Dame, and shew yourself

yourself to your people : we will accompany you, for the citizens of Paris are very desirous to see you.'

The king replied, he would do as they had advised, and then entered into conversation with his brother the duke of Orleans, whom he much loved. His uncles received the duke kindly, blaming him a little for the youthful trick he had played. It seemed he was not displeased at their lecture, and declared he never intended or suspected he was doing wrong.

On the point of nine o'clock, the king and his attendants mounted their horses, and rode through Paris from the hôtel de Saint Pol, to the church of Notre Dame, to appease the people, who were in great commotion, where he heard mass, and made his offerings. He then returned to the hôtel de Saint Pol with his lords, who dined there.

This accident was by degrees forgotten, and obsequies, prayers and alms were made for the dead. Ah, count Gaston de Foix ! hadst thou been alive, and heard of the cruel death of this thy favourite son, thou wouldest have been sadly grieved, for thou didst love him much, and I know not how thou wouldest have been consoled. All the lords and ladies in France, when they heard of this accident, were shocked and grieved.

But you must know, that pope Boniface and his cardinals at Rome were well pleased when they learnt the news, because the king was contrary to their interests. They said among themselves, in

a con-

a confisitory, that it was a second punishment sent by God, to make him take warning, for having supported the anti-pope of Avignon, Robert de Geneve, who was false, proud and presumptuous, and had never done one good act in his whole life, but had deceived the world. The pope and cardinals resolved to send in a secret manner and without pomp, a learned friar to the king of France, well instructed how to speak and preach, to attempt to bring him and the French nation back to the way of salvation. They maintained, that he was now gone astray, and that being the greatest king in Christendom, the church ought to be enlightened and supported by him more than by any other.

They selected a devout and sensible man, whom they ordered to go into France ; but, before his departure, they fully instructed him what to say and how to act. This was not so quickly done, nor did the envoy soon arrive, for the distance was great, and he had many different states to pass through. It was beside necessary that the friar, who was a Franciscan monk, should know if the king of France were willing to see him before he set out.

CHAP. XIV.

THE DUCHESS OF BERRY SUPPORTS THE LORD DE LA RIVIERE, IN OPPOSITION TO THE DUCHESS OF BURGUNDY.

WE will return to the affairs of France, and say how they were going on. Notwithstanding the king's recovery, the dukes of Berry and Burgundy did not desist from their attempts to ruin that valiant and prudent knight, the lord de la Riviere. He and sir John le Mercier were still confined in the Bastille of Saint Anthony, under the care of the viscount d'Achy; and it was current through Paris, that they would be put to death, insomuch that it was daily expected they would be delivered over to the provost of the Châtelet, and when once this was done nothing could prevent them from being publicly beheaded as traitors to the crown of France. From the information I then had, I am convinced their execution would have taken place, had not the grace of God been shewn them, and the duchess of Berry exerted herself so much. This good lady was incessant in her entreaties for la Riviere, who had carried her to France and concluded her marriage, but not without great difficulty, with the duke of Berry. Sir John le Mercier was therefore fortunate in his situation to share the benefits of her

her exertions. She frequently, with tears, addressed her lord, saying, ‘that he was instigated by the malicious and envious insinuations of the enemies of la Riviere to keep him so long in prison, and confiscate his inheritance. Ah, my lord, you make him a very ungrateful return for all the pains he took in bringing about our marriage, when you thus consent to his destruction. At least, if you take his property, spare his life; for, if he be executed for the charges that are so unjustly made against him, I shall never again enjoy happiness. My lord, I do not say this from any feigned motive, but I really feel that it will weigh most heavily on my mind. I therefore pray God you will take proper measures for his deliverance.’

The duke perceiving she was in earnest, and that her arguments were good, abated greatly his hatred to the lord de la Riviere, who would sooner have obtained his liberty; but they were desirous of putting to death sir John le Mercier, and they could not punish one without the other. This sir John le Mercier had wept so long in prison, that he had almost lost his eye-sight.

Had the duchess of Burgundy been listened to they would have suffered a disgraceful and public death, without hopes of mercy, for she hated them because they had, with sir Oliver de Clisson, advised the king of France to make the expedition into Brittany, to destroy her cousin the duke. She said, that Clisson, le Mercier and la Riviere were the

the cause of the king's illness, which would never have happened, had they not persuaded him to undertake the war against Brittany.

You must know, that although the king was now in a tolerably good state of mental and bodily health, the dukes of Berry and Burgundy did not resign the government of the kingdom ; and, as they had all the weight, they determined to have the profit also. To this end, they placed only their creatures about the king's person, who was but a king in name, for the two dukes took on themselves to manage whatever concerned the realm. The duchess of Orleans was not pleased that the duchess of Burgundy should have rank second to the queen. She loved honours, and said to those in her confidence,—‘ The duchess of Burgundy has no right to take precedence of me : I am nearer the crown of France than she is, for my lord is brother to the king. It may so happen that he shall be king ; and, as I then must be queen, I know no reason why she is thus eager of honours that are not belonging to her and to place me behind her.’

We will for a while leave these ladies, and speak of some changes in France, and of sir Oliver de Clisson, and of the manner in which he was treated.

CHAP. XV.

THE LORD DE COUCY REFUSES TO ACCEPT THE SWORD OF CONSTABLE IN THE ROOM OF CLISSON.—THE DUKES OF BERRY AND BURGUNDY INVEST THE LORD PHILIP D'ARTOIS, COUNT D'EU, WITH IT, IN CONSIDERATION OF HIS MARRIAGE WITH THE LADY MARY OF BERRY, WIDOW OF THE LORD LOUIS DE BLOIS.

YOU have before heard that the constable was summoned publicly by the parliament of Paris, after an adjournment of fifteen days between each summons, and how commissioners were sent in pursuit of him to Brittany, but in vain, for he concealed himself from them. Had they been able to have spoken to him, they would have served him personally with the orders of the court, and laid hands on him, according to the instructions they had received.

When, on their return, they had given an account of their mission to the parliament, it was determined by the court and lords of parliament, that sir Oliver de Clisson, constable of France, had forfeited the protection of the court, and should be banished France, and deprived of all offices and possessions he held within that kingdom; for that he had contumaciously refused obedience to the summons of the great chamber,

VOL. XI. G though

though sealed with their seal, and also had refused to send back his sword of office.

The dukes of Berry and Burgundy, with their councils, who all hated the constable, and wished his ruin, said they would provide a remedy ; for the office of constable was so noble, and of such weight, it could not long remain vacant, for fear of accidents that might happen.

The lord de Coucy was thought the most proper person to fill it ; but he excused himself, and refused positively to accept of it, though he should be forced to leave France. When they saw he was determined, they looked elsewhere. At this time, a treaty of marriage was in agitation between the lord Philip d'Artois and the young countess de Dunois, the widow of the lord Louis de Blois, and the king of France was well inclined that this marriage with his cousin should take place, but the duke of Berry refused his consent ; for the county of Eu is but of small value, in comparison of what she was entitled to from her first union, and he looked to marry her more nobly. To say the truth, the countess was, for beauty and goodness, and every thing belonging to a noble lady, worthy of the highest rank.

The duke of Berry, however, was unwilling to anger the king of France, who knew well that he was solicited by many persons for the hand of his daughter : among whom were the young duke of Lorraine, the count d'Armagnac, and the eldest son of the count de Foix and de Béarn. The king was averse to all these proposals, and said

to

to the duke of Berry,—‘ Fair uncle of Berry, we are not willing that our cousin, your daughter, should be settled at a distance from the fleurs de lis. We will provide a marriage for her, that shall be suitable in all respects. We see her with pleasure near us ; and it becometh her not to leave her mother-in-law, as they are nearly of the same age.’ These words and others cooled the duke’s intentions of marrying his daughter otherwise than as it pleased the king, who leant to his cousin, the lord Philip d’Artois. He was a young and gallant knight, and had acquired great renown in arms, in the different expeditions he had made, as well near home as beyond sea, and was also much in the favour of the knights and squires of France.

The dukes of Berry and Burgundy agreed, that if the king would give to their cousin of Artois the office of constable of France, which was now vacant, from the sentence against sir Oliver de Clisson, the marriage with the lady Mary should take place ; for, in case he were constable, he would be wealthy enough to keep a becoming state. They resolved to speak to the king on this subject, which they did, as follows : ‘ My lord, your council recommends that our cousin, the lord Philip d’Artois, count d’Eu, be invested with the office of constable of France ; for Clisson, by the sentence of your judges in parliament, has forfeited it, and the office cannot longer be vacant without great prejudice to the realm. You are boundenly as well as ourselves, to assist our cousin

of Artois, for he is very nearly related to us by blood ; and, since such an office is vacant, we cannot better fill it than by sir Philip d'Artois, for he will ably and loyally execute it, and is much beloved by every knight and squire, being without envy or avarice.'

This speech was very agreeable to the king, who gaily replied, that he would think of it, and, if the office was to be disposed of, he would rather the count d'Eu had it than any other. Things remained some time in this state ; but the king was continually solicited by his uncles, who were desirous of advancing sir Philip d'Artois, and degrading sir Oliver de Clisson ; for the duke of Berry hated him for the death of Bethisac, and the duke of Burgundy for his opposition to the duke of Brittany ; but the duchess of Burgundy was yet more inveterate against him than her lord.

The king at length gave his assent, on condition the duke of Berry gave him his daughter. But, before matters had proceeded thus far, in order to avoid disgusting the king, and to satisfy the duke of Orleans, who strongly supported the lord de Clisson, sir William des Bordes, sir William Martel, both knights of the king's chamber, and sir Philip de Savoisis, knight to the duke of Berry, were again sent to Brittany, to speak with sir Oliver de Clisson in the king's name.

These knights, having made their preparations, took their road through Angers, where they met the queen of Jerusalem and John of Brittany, who hand-

handsomely entertained them, in honour of the king. They remained at Angers two days, and inquired where they could find the lord de Clifson, for they had a very courteous message to deliver to him from the king alone, who had ordered them to speak with him. They replied, that they had not any positive intelligence where he was ; but they supposed he must be in one of his castles in Brittany : that he did not constantly remain in any one, but moved from one to another.

At their departure, the knights took leave of the queen, her son Charles, prince of Tarentum, and John of Brittany, count de Penthièvre, and continued their journey to Rennes. The duke of Brittany had shut himself up with his duchefs in Vannes, without making any excursions abroad for fear of ambuscades, and meeting his adversary Clifson, as they were carrying on a murderous war against each other. When their parties met, mercy was shewn by neither, and the field was gained by the death of their opponents : if, therefore, he felt alarmed, he had cause for it ; for, although the duke was sovereign of the country, there was not a knight or squire that would bear arms against the lord de Clifson. They dissembled with the duke, saying, the quarrel did not any way concern them, and staid at home without interfering. This the duke was forced to put up with.

When the knights arrived at Rennes, they asked where they could for certain find sir Oliver de Clifson, but no one could positively answer them.

They resolved to ride to château Josselin, and were well received by the vassals of sir Oliver, out of respect to the king of France. They inquired after their lord, and where they could see him, for they were sent by the king and the duke of Orleans to speak with him. They either would not, or could not give them any satisfactory account ; but said, in excuse for themselves and sir Oliver,—‘ Certainly, my lords, not one of us knows where to find him : to-day he is at one place, to-morrow at another. You may safely ride all over Brittany, since you come from the king ; and all the castles and houses of our lord will be thrown open to you.’

Perceiving they could not obtain any further information, they left château Josselin, and rode to all the castles, both great and small, of the lord de Clisson, but without learning any thing more. They then waited on the duke and duchess at Vannes, who gave them a hearty welcome ; but they only staid half a day with them, without discovering the object of their secret mission, nor was the duke very inquisitive about their coming. They did not see sir Peter Craon. On taking leave of the duke and duchess, they set out on their return to Paris to the king and lords, who were expecting them.

They gave an account to the king and the duke of Orleans, of having visited all the towns and castles of the lord de Clisson without seeing or gaining any certain intelligence of him. The dukes of Berry and Burgundy were pleased at hearing

hearing this, and would not have wished it otherwise.

Shortly afterward, the marriage was consummated between the lord Philip d'Artois and the lady Mary of Berry. He was appointed constable of France, to enjoy all the privileges and emoluments of that office, although sir Oliver de Clisson had not resigned it nor sent back his sword of office. He persisted that he was still constable, for that he had never done any thing against the king or crown of France that could have deprived him of it. Things, therefore, remained in this state.

CHAP. XVI.

THE CONSTABLE DE CLISSON, DURING HIS ABSENCE FROM FRANCE, WAGES WAR ON THE DUKE OF BRITTANY.

SIR Oliver de Clisson was soon informed that the Count d'Eu was nominated constable of France, and was to do the duty and receive the profits from the date of his appointment, with the consent of the king of France, and that he had married the daughter of the duke of Berry, widow of lord Lewis of Blois. To all this he was perfectly indifferent, for he felt that his loyalty and honour were as firm as ever, and that he had never done any thing to

forfeit either against the king or crown of France, but that all these proceedings originated in the hatred and malice of the dukes of Berry and Burgundy, which were so great that they could not conceal them.

This determined the lord de Clisson to continue his war with prudence and vigour against the duke of Brittany. It was severe and bloody, for neither party, when they met, made a sham of fighting, but killed each other without mercy. The lord de Clisson rode frequently from one of his castles to another, and laid more ambuscades than the duke, finding himself superior in numbers to oppose him. None of the Breton chivalry would interfere by bearing arms on either side; but, when the duke sent for them, they came to know what he wanted. He demanded from them aid and advice to correct his vassal, sir Oliver de Clisson, who had greatly misbehaved himself towards him. The barons of Brittany, such as the viscount de Rohan, the lord de Dinant, sir Hermen de Lyon, and many more, excused themselves, saying, they were uninterested in this quarrel, and would not therefore bear arms against the lord de Clisson; but that they would heartily labour to mediate between the duke and him, if they knew how, or saw any probability of establishing peace between them.

The duke seeing he could no way prevail on them to join him, and that in this warfare he was losing more men than the lord de Clisson, consented to send the above-named barons to treat with him, and bring him, under safe passports, to Vannes, that they

they might confer together. They were to add, that he would find him courteous and well inclined to listen to any reasonable terms ; and, if he had treated him with contempt, he would make such reparations as those he addressed should think proper.

The knights willingly undertook the mission, for the sake of doing good, and set out in search of sir Oliver de Clifon, whom I believe they found at château Josselin. They told him the message they were charged with from the duke, and urged him strongly to accept of peace ; for a war between them was very unbecoming, displeasing to the nobles, and highly oppressive to the lower orders in Brittany. ‘ Sir Oliver,’ said they, ‘ we are thus pressing, in the hope that you will be pleased to wait on our lord ; and, for your safety and secure return, we pledge ourselves to remain in your castle of Josselin, without ever stirring beyond the gates. We imagine, that when our lord and you shall confer together, you will very speedily settle your differences, for we left him with the best intentions towards you.’

To this speech, sir Oliver replied,—‘ My good sirs, what advantage can my death be to you ? Do you think I know not the duke of Brittany ? Most certainly I do ; and he is too haughty and revengeful, whatever he may have assured you relative to my security and safe return, not to resolve the moment I shall be in his presence to have me put to death, in spite of his promises to you ; and, if I be killed, your fate will be the same, for my people will

will of course retaliate on you. It is, therefore, much better we run not such risks. I will guard myself well against him ; and let him, if he please, do the same.'

' Fair cousin,' replied sir Charles de Dinant, ' you may say what you please; we have not seen him shew any wish to have you killed, if he could converse with you in the manner we have proposed, but, on the contrary, the strongest desire to accommodate all matters of dispute. We therefore, for him and for ourselves, beg you will consent to it.'

Sir Oliver answered,—' I believe firmly, that you wish me every good ; but, on the security he offers through you, I will not advance one step. However, since you are all so earnest in the business, for which it behoves me to thank you, I will mention on what terms I will come to him ; and you shall, if they be agreeable to you, carry them back as my final answer. On your return, you will tell the duke, that I will not accept other pledge for my safety than his only son, who is betrothed to a princess of France. Let him send him hither to remain under the guard of my men, in château Joffelin, until I be returned, and I will then set out to wait on him. This mode is more agreeable to me than any other, and also more reasonable ; for were you to remain here as hostages, as you offer, who would there be to negotiate the treaty ? or who would be the mediators between us ? and how, without your interference, shall we ever come to an agreement ?'

When

When the three barons saw he was determined, they took leave of the lord de Clisson, and returned to Vannes, to relate to the duke what sir Oliver had said. In regard to sending his son to château Josselin, the duke absolutely refused, and the war continued on the same footing as before, so that no merchants or others dared to travel through the country. All commerce was at a stand in Brittany, which was severely felt in the cities and large towns: even the labourers in husbandry were also in a state of idleness.

The duchess of Burgundy assisted her cousin as much as she could with men at arms from Burgundy and elsewhere, for the duke could not prevail on his subjects to take part in the war, and the knights and squires, excepting those of his household, dissembled their opinions.

On the other hand, the duke of Orleans, who was attached to the constable, supported him underhand, and sent him men at arms and good couriers to re-mount his men. Sir Oliver made more frequent excursions than the duke, and it happened that he met with two of the duke's squires who were going on his business: one of them was called Bernard, and the other Yvonnet: they could neither fly nor avoid falling into sir Oliver's hands, who was rejoiced at it, for he was well acquainted with them. One had in former times done him a service, the other the contrary, which he then recollectec. They were much frightened at being thus caught, and sir Oliver addressed them,—‘Dost thou remember, Yvonnet,
how

How cruelly thou behavedst to me in the castle of Ermine, near Vannes, when thou didst shut me up in a dungeon. Thou, Bernard, then hadst pity on me, and pulling off thy coat, because I was only in my doublet and lying on the pavement, gavest it me, to cover me from the cold. I will now return that friendship, by sparing thy life; but as for this wicked traitor, Yvonnet, who might have avoided, if he pleased, the cruelty of his conduct, he shall suffer.' At these words, he drew his dagger, and slew him on the spot. He then continued his course without touching the servants.

Another time, sir Oliver de Clisson, with about three hundred lances, was riding before the castle of Auray, in which were the duke and duchess. He met about forty of the duke's varlets, who had tied their horses to trees, for it was near Midsummer, and, having cut some hay, were trussing it up to carry, like foragers, to their lodgings. Sir Oliver galloped among them, without other harm than the fright he put them to, and said,— ' How dare you take the field, and carry away the harvest of the farmers? You have not sown this, and are cutting it before it is ripe: you have begun your harvest too soon. Come take up your scythes, and mount your horses: for this time I will do you no harm; but go and tell the duke of Brittany, who I know is in Auray, to come hither, or send his men to receive me; and that Clisson informs him he will remain here until sun-set.'

The varlets were happy in their escape, for they thought they should all be killed, therefore they picked

When this was fixed, great preparations were made for the reception of the king in Abbeville; and the abbey of Saint Peter, as being a large and handsome edifice of the benedictine monks, was chosen for his lodgings. Thither came the king of France, accompanied by his brother, the duke of Orleans, and sir Reginald de Corbie*, chancellor of France. The dukes of Berry and Burgundy, with the other commissioners, were at Boulogne, and the duke of Lancaster and his company at Calais.

It was a handsome show to see the state and array of the French and English commissioners, when they opened the conferences at Leulinghen, between Boulogne and Calais. There were tents and pavilions erected for them to take refreshments, or sleep in on occasion; and two or three days in the week the commissioners met, and were frequently nine hours discussing the preliminaries for a peace, in a large and handsome pavilion that had been pitched for their assembling in.

It was told me, (for I John Froissart, the writer of this history, was at Abbeville, that I might learn the truth of what was passing) by those who were well informed, that after the procurations from the two kings had been verified as to the commissioners' powers of concluding a peace, the

* I imagine this must be a mistake, though the MSS. are the same; for Pierre de Giac was chancellor after sir Miles des Doms, and died 1407. Arnaud de Corbie succeeded him, and died 1413.—HENNAULT.

French proposed that Calais should be so demolished, as that it could never again be made habitable. The dukes of Lancaster and Gloucester instantly answered, that they needed not have made this proposition, for that Calais would be the very last town the crown of England would part with; and that if they intended this as a basis for treating, there was an end to the business, for they would not hear further on the subject. The dukes of Berry and Burgundy, perceiving their cousins of England so determined, dropped the matter, for they found it would be vain to press it, and disengaged on other topics.

The English, for a long time, demanded restitution of every thing that had been yielded to the late king Edward, and, in addition to these territories, the balance of the ransom that had been due when the war was renewed between France and England. This was resisted strenuously by the French dukes, who argued themselves, and by their learned clerks, on the unreasonableness of the demand. The two dukes and the chancellor of France replied with temper,—‘ that with regard to the first demand, that the whole of the territory that had been yielded to king Edward should be restored, it was impossible; for the inhabitants of the towns, castles and lands, which had been assigned to England by the treaty of Bretigny, and afterwards confirmed at Calais, in the year 1360, were too adverse to such restoration; and the king of France, to whom they had voluntarily surrendered themselves, had, in con-

sequence, accepted their homage, granted them protection, and such other privileges, on his royal word, as could not be broken; and that, if they wished for peace, they must offer other preliminaries.

It was then resolved, between the four dukes, on whom it solely depended, whether there should be peace or war, that each party should reduce to writing their different grounds of treating, and mutually deliver them to each other, to consider of them at their leisure, with their clerks, learned in the laws, who had accompanied them, and determine on what parts they could agree to, and what would not be accepted. This was assented to by all; for the dukes were before much fatigued in hearing the various papers read and discussed: more especially the English commissioners; for, as it was carried on in French, they were not so well used to the finesse and double meanings of that language as the natives, who turned and twisted it to their own advantage at pleasure. The English opposed this, for they wished every thing to be made clear and intelligible to every one.

The French accused the English of having, at various times, infringed the articles of the peace, and offered to prove it by written documents, and the word of their king, as well as by the judgment of the pope. This made the English more diligent to have every thing made out plain; and, whenever they found any thing obscure in the proposals that had been given them from the French commissioners, which they examined carefully and

at leisure, they made their clerks demand from the dukes of Berry and Burgundy how they understood such expressions; for the English dukes would not pass over an article that had the least tendency to a double meaning; and whatever they did not clearly understand they had erased in their presence, declaring they would not allow of anything that could bear a misconstruction, for that the French, who had been from their youth trained to such things, were more subtle than the English.

So many difficulties greatly lengthened the conferences; and the English held themselves obliged to demand restitution of all the lands dependant on Aquitaine, and their profits since the commencement of the war, as they had been charged to do by the parliament of England. This the French would not agree to: they were willing, indeed, to yield the countries of Tarbes, Bigorre, Agen and the Agenois, with Perigord, but declared they would never restore Cahors, Rouergue, Quercy and Limousin, nor give up any part of Ponthieu or Guines more than the English possessed at the present moment.

On these grounds things remained: they stood out for upwards of fifteen days, and only came to the conclusion that it should be laid before the two kings: to forward the business, the dukes of Berry and Burgundy offered to set out for Abbeville, to inform the king of France of all that had passed; and, if he would acquiesce in the English proposals, they would not oppose them. They entreated, on

the other hand, their cousins to write to king Richard; and amicably let him know what they had done; for he had, for two years past, shewn the most anxious desire for peace between England, France and all their allies.

The two dukes promised compliance; but you must know, as I was well informed, the duke of Gloucester was more difficult to persuade than his brother, and he had been purposely chosen his colleague, by those who preferred war to peace, because they knew he would not assent to anything that was in the least dishonourable to his country.

The four dukes then separated in a most friendly manner, having been nine days in conference. The English commissioners returned to Calais, and the French to Boulogne, whence they set out for Abbeville. They found there the king of France, who was amusing himself, he having taken a liking to the place. There is scarcely any city in France more pleasantly situated; and within it is a handsome inclosed garden, partly surrounded by the river Somme, in which the king spent much of his time, and often supped there, telling his brother and council that the air of Abbeville had done his health great good.

At this time, Léon king of Armenia was with the king of France: he was just come from Greece and the frontiers of his own kingdom, into which he dared not venture; for the Turks had conquered, and kept possession of it as well as other places, in defiance of the world, except-

excepting the strong town of Conich*, situated on the sea-shore, which the Genoese had strongly garrisoned and guarded against the Turks; for, if they had possession of this place, they would grievously harass by sea the Cypriotes, and other Christians of Rhodes and Candia.

The king of Armenia would gladly have seen a peace concluded between France and England, that such knights and squires as wished for deeds of arms might travel to Greece, and assist him in the recovery of his kingdom. The king received kindly his two uncles at Abbeville, and made them good cheer. He asked how the treaty was going on, and how they were themselves. They having related to him the true state of affairs, and how all had passed, he was well contented, and testified his joy and wishes for peace.

In like manner, the two English dukes, on their arrival at Calais, had written to the king of England the demands and answers made to them, which, being sealed, were forwarded to him. In reply to which, the king had desired they would proceed in the treaty, for the war had lasted long enough, to the ruin of the country, and the slaughter of chivalry, and the great weakening of Christendom. ‘This might,’ he added, ‘have serious consequences; for Bajazet with his Turks were advancing towards the kingdom of Hungary, and were now in Wallachia, as letters to France and England had brought information.’

* Conich. The MSS. have Courch.

The time was now come for the return of the four dukes and commissioners to the renewal of the conferences at Leulinghen. With the French lords came the king of Armenia, to remonstrate with the English on his distressing situation : he was well known to the duke of Gloucester, when he had visited England during the threatened invasion from France, who had shewn him many civilities, and carried him to a beautiful castle he had in Essex called Pleshy. The dukes of Lancaster and Gloucester received him well, particularly the last, on account of former acquaintance. They patiently listened to all his grievances, and replied so graciously that he was well contented with them. At these conferences many different proposals were made ; and the cardinal de Luna*, in hopes of being heard by the commissioners, had made a long stay at Abbeville, whither he had been sent as legate by pope Clement for the affairs of the church. He was lodged at the convent of the Cordeliers, on the river Somme. The French wanted to insert in their preliminaries some articles relative to the church and to the support of this Robert de Geneve, who styled himself pope : but when the English dukes observed this, they stepped forward with courage, saying to their cousins of France,— Take away this legate : we want not to hear his speeches : it has not been without

* The cardinal de Luna, an Arragonian, was anti-pope after the death of Clement, under the name of Benedict XIII. See more of his turbulent life in Muratori, &c.

fully weighing their merits that we have determined which of the popes to obey. We desire, therefore, not to hear any thing on this subject; and, should he again come forward under your protection, we will break up the conference and return home.'

From this time, nothing more was said of the cardinal, who remained quiet in Abbeville. The lords now pushed forward the treaty with such success that it was brought to a happy conclusion, and to the satisfaction of all parties.

The four dukes saw their respective kings were anxious for peace, more especially the king of France, who, when the duke of Lancaster had taken leave of him at Amiens during the former conferences, had said,—‘ Fair cousin, I beg you to exert yourself that there may be a solid peace between my brother of England and me, that we may assist our cousin the king of Hungary against Bajazet, who is so powerful in Turkey.’

The duke of Lancaster had promised the king to do his utmost; and indeed it was through his remonstrances with his nephew, king Richard, his brothers, and the parliament, that the conferences were renewed at Leulinghen, to establish a peace, if possible, to the honour of England. The duke of Gloucester was much colder in the matter, and carefully noticed all the contentious speeches of the French, saying, the French always wished to fight with both hands. He made so strong an opposition, that the adverse party perceiving it, sent a squire of honour, and of the

bed chamber and council of the king of France, to the duke : his name was Robert l'Hermite ; and this is what he said, for the duke related to me the words at his castle of Pleshy. ‘ My lord, for the love of God do not longer oppose a peace. You see how diligent our lords of France are in promoting it, and it will be charity in you to join them, for the war has lasted too long ; and, when kings wish for peace, their relations and subjects ought to obey.’ ‘ Robert, Robert,’ replied the duke of Gloucester, ‘ I wish not to prevent a peace; but you Frenchmen use such specious words, beyond our understanding, that, when you will, you may urge them as signifying war or peace as you shall choose. In this manner has the business hitherto been conducted, dissembling always until you have gained your end. If my lord, the king, had believed me, and the majority of those who are bound to serve him, there never would have been peace with France, until you had restored to us all you have taken through treacherous causes, as is known to God, and to all who will search into the business. But, since my lord inclines to peace, you are in the right to press it forward : it is just that we should also approve of it, and since peace is so much wished for are we here assembled : let it, however, be well kept on your side, as it shall be on ours.’ On saying this, the duke of Gloucester went away. Robert l’Hermite, at the same time, took his leave, and returned to his countrymen. I will not protract the subject longer

longer, but come to the conclusion, as the matter requires it.

The four dukes, having full powers from their respective monarchs, to conclude a truce or peace, continued their conferences with such success, that the report in Abbeville was current of a peace having been made between France, England and their allies. But I, the author of this history, who at the time resided in Abbeville, to learn news, could never understand that a peace had been concluded: only the truce had been prolonged for four years, on sea and land, between all the parties. It was imagined that, before the expiration of this term, all the territories and lordships in Languedoc, that were to revert to the kings of England and their heirs for ever, would be surrendered to king Richard, or to his commissioners.

In return for the giving up so many towns, castles and lordships, which had been agreed to by the commissioners for peace, the dukes of Lancaster and Gloucester engaged that their captains, of whatever nation they might be, who held possession of different forts in France, that were to revert to the king of France, should evacuate them, and cease from carrying on any war under the name and pretext of the king of England or the English. All the articles of the truce were fairly written out, signed and sealed by the different lords, and copies of them sent to the two kings, before they parted, at Leulinghen.

The

The king of England was very impatient to hear of peace being concluded, and his uncles, knowing this, determined to send him an express with the news; they called to them a herald, named Marche, who was king at arms in England, and wrote to the king by him the whole detail of what had been agreed on, and signed by both parties. The herald was rejoiced to receive these letters from the dukes, and, leaving the English tents, rode to Calais, where he hired a fishing-boat, and, by the grace of God, a favourable wind, and the exertions of the fishermen, was speedily landed at Dover. He then continued his journey until he came to London, where found the king. On his arrival, he was introduced into the king's chamber, because he was come from Calais, where the king's uncles were negotiating a peace. He presented his letters; and the king, having perused them, was so well pleased with their contents, and the good news he had brought that he gave him very rich gifts, and a handsome annuity, as the herald told me afterwards when riding with him through part of England.

CHAP. XVIII.

**THE TREATY OF PEACE IS NEARLY BROKEN OFF
BY POPE BONIFACE, AND BY THE KING OF
FRANCE RELAPSING INTO HIS FORMER ILL-
NESS.**

LET us return to the commissioners from France and England at Leulinghen. When they pleased they lived in tents, which were prepared for them in great numbers and magnificence. The English were very attentive to the verification of the different papers, that nothing obscure or doubtful might remain. They examined every paper, and had every expression made clear before they signed them.

From an event that happened, the negotiations which had taken up so much time were near being broken off. I will say what it was; for in matters of history every thing should be detailed, that the truth may be more apparent. You have heard that the king of France had made a long stay at Abbeville: he took pleasure in the place, but his stay was prolonged on account of the treaty that was going forward at Leulinghen.

Just at the conclusion of the treaty, the dukes of Lancaster and Gloucester declared it was the intention of king Richard and the parliament, that pope Boniface, who was acknowledged for the true pope by the Romans, Germans, Hungarians, Lombards,

Lombards, Venetians, English, and by all Christendom except France, should be received as such, and the person who styled himself pope Clement be degraded and condemned. This proposal, the two dukes said, they had been specifically ordered to make by the three estates of England.

When the dukes of Berry and Burgundy heard this, to please their cousins of England, and to prevent the treaty from being interrupted, they desired, in a friendly way, to have a little time to consider what they had proposed. It being granted, they consulted together; and the duke of Burgundy eloquently and prudently answered as follows, to soften the matter to the English dukes: —
 It does not seem to us any way proper that we should intermix with our negotiations the dispute between the two popes. My brother of Berry and myself are somewhat surprised how you could have proposed it, for at the beginning of the conferences you objected to the presence of the cardinal de Luna, who is now at Abbeville as legate from the pope, and refused to hear any thing he had to say. We had before determined that when the cardinals elected Urban for pope, and on his death Boniface, the elections were null, for no one either from your country or ours was summoned to them; and the election of him who calls himself Clement and resides at Avignon is, from the same cause, in the like predicament. We do not deny that it would be great charity in those who could attend to it, to appease and put an end to

to this schism in the church. But, in regard to ourselves, we must refer the matter to the university of Paris ; and, when all our business here shall be concluded by a solid peace, we will, in conjunction with the council of our cousin the king of Germany, willingly attend to this matter, as you may do on your side.'

This reply of the duke of Burgundy was agreeable to the English dukes, for it seemed reasonable, and they answered, ' You have well spoken : let the matter now rest, and be as you say.' The negotiations were going on as well as before ; but there fell out, just at the conclusion, a great hindrance by the king of France relapsing into the same frenzy by which he was afflicted in the preceding year. He had remained at Abbeville until near Midsummer, at the abbey of Saint Peter, passing his time in a variety of amusements. The first that noticed his relapse was a Norman knight, called sir William Martel, who was employed the most about the king's person.

The dukes of Berry and Burgundy were at the time at Leulinghen or Boulogne, bringing the conference to a close, or at least finishing all that could be done this year. The moment the duke of Orleans perceived the state of the king's health, he sent information to his uncles by a favourite squire of his own, called Boniface, an agreeable man. The two dukes, on hearing this unfortunate intelligence, set out as speedily as they could ; for they had already taken leave of their cousins of England, who were returned to Calais to wait for information

information from the king of Navarre and the duke of Brittany.

It had been proposed at the conferences, that as the castle of Cherbourg in Normandy, had been mortgaged to the king of England for sixty thousand nobles, who in consequence had possession, it should be restored to the king of Navarre, on the king of France repaying the sixty thousand nobles; and in like manner was the castle of Breis to be surrendered to the duke of Brittany. The dukes of Berry and Burgundy did not wait for the conclusion of these two articles, but hastened to Abbeville, where, to their sorrow, they found the king in a very poor state of health.

The king's disorder was kept secret as long as possible, but in such cases it is very soon publicly known.

The court at Abbeville was shortly dispersed, and every one retired to his home. Councils were holden as to the proper place the king should be conveyed to, and in respect to his management. The castle of Creil was again fixed on for his residence, whither he was carried in a litter. The weather was now so hot, that they rested the day and only travelled the night season: the king was attended to Creil by his brother and the duke of Berry. The duke of Burgundy went to Artois, and thence visited Flanders, having met his duchess at the castle of Hédin.

The lord de la Riviere and sir John le Mercier seemed entirely forgotten: no one spoke of them, nor interfered in their delivery from prison. This
relapse

relapse of the king had, however, greatly exculpated them from the accusations of having been the cause of his first illness in the eyes of the public. The wisest in France had now learnt, that from the weakness of his nerves, he was naturally inclined to this disorder, which had been brought forward with greater force from the excesses he had indulged in. It was much regretted by those who wished his recovery that master William de Harfey was no more, for his relatives knew not where to seek a prudent physician that was acquainted with his disorder. It was, however, a matter of necessity to make the best use of such as they had.

CHAP. XIX.

THE DEATH OF POPE CLEMENT AT AVIGNON.—
THE ELECTION OF POPE BENEDICT.--A LEARNED
CLERK, IN THE ARCHBISHOPRICK OF RHEIMS,
SUPPORTS THE RIGHT OF THE SEE OF AVIGNON,
BY HIS SPEECHES AND PREACHINGS.

IN the month of September, of this year, Robert de Geneve, whom we have called pope in our history, died at his palace in Avignon. It happened to him just as he had wished, that he might die pope. He died indeed with the honour and state I have mentioned, but whether he enjoyed

joyed these wrongfully or not, I shall not pretend to determine, for such matters do not belong to me.

The cardinals at Avignon were much surprised at this event, and resolved to form a conclave in haste, and elect one from among themselves as his successor.

The health of the king of France was again beginning to return, to the great joy of all who loved him, and his good queen, who had been in great affliction. She was a valiant lady, whom God corrected and loved: she had made many processions, and given great alms, in hopes of his recovery, in several parts of France, but especially in Paris.

The college of cardinals at Avignon, as I was then informed, elected pope the cardinal legate de Luna. To say the truth, he was a devout man, and of a contemplative life; but they had chosen him subject to the approbation of the king of France and his council, otherwise they would not have been able to maintain their election. Consider how much the church must have been degraded by this schism, when those who were, or ought to have been free, thus subjected themselves to the will of others, whom they should have commanded.

All the solemnities required at the coronation of a pope were paid to the cardinal de Luna, who took the name of Benedict. He offered a general pardon to all clergy who should come to Avignon; and, by the advice of his cardinals, wrote letters

to the king of France, to announce his elevation to the papacy.

I heard that the king paid little attention to his letter; for he was not yet determined whether to acknowledge him for pope or no; and, to have the best advice on the occasion, he summoned before him the most learned and prudent clerks of the university of Paris.

Master John Gigencourt and master Peter Playons *, who were esteemed the most learned and acute in the university, told the king, as did others, that the schism in the church corrupted the Christian faith; that the church ought not longer to be kept in this state, for that all Christendom suffered from it, but more particularly churchmen; and that it was unbecoming the university to send to pope Benedict at Avignon, lists of those priests who had need of briefs. The king, on hearing their opinions, thought them reasonable, and consented that there should be a cessation of such lists as were usually sent to the pope, until the disputes between the two popes were settled: things therefore remained in this state.

The duke of Berry, however, strenuously supported the new pope; and all the clergy dependent on him acknowledged him for the true one; and many of his people were provided with pardons from this Benedict.

* In the Museum MS. it is Gignicourt and Pierre de Lyons: in mine, the first as D. Sauvage. and the other Pierre de Palions.

The duke and duchess of Burgundy, the duke of Orleans, with many other great lords of France, dissembled their real opinions on the subject to the king. Some through favour acknowledged Benedict, who was prodigal of his pardons, in order that the court of Avignon might thrive the more.

The duke of Brittany readily enough followed the opinion of the king of France; for he had been in former times so scandalized, by the information the earl of Flanders, his cousin, had given him of the rebellion in the church, that he would never allow of Clement being the true pope, although his clergy paid him obedience and acknowledged him. When any of the churches in France became vacant, the king disposed of them to clergymen, without ever speaking of it to pope Benedict, who, as well as his cardinals, was greatly surprised at such conduct, and began to fear the king would deprive them of the benefices they held in his realm.

They resolved, therefore; to send a well-instructed legate to France, to remonstrate with the king and council on the state of the church, and to learn their intentions, and likewise to assure them that the pope they had elected was only conditionally chosen, in case of his proving agreeable to the king, but that otherwise they would dethrone him, and exalt another more to his pleasure.

About this period, the friar, whom I before mentioned to have been sent by pope Boniface to

the

the king of France, but without the pomp or state of a legate, arrived at Paris, with the consent of the king, who listened to his arguments and sermons with pleasure. The legate from Avignon, a subtle and eloquent clerk, was heard also by the king and his court: those attached to the pope at Avignon took good care to push him forward, and contrived that he should have audiences often.

It was the opinion of the council, but it was not without great difficulty the university of Paris subscribed to this opinion, that it would be a wise and prudent measure, if means could be found to make the rival popes resign their dignities, as well as all the cardinals, and then select the most learned and prudent among the clergy, from the empire of Germany, France, and other countries, who should form a general council, and then, without favour or affection to any party, restore the church to its former unity, discipline and stability. They declared they saw no other way of destroying the schism; for the hearts of different lords were so swollen with pride, each would support his own party.

This idea, which was proposed in the presence of the king, and the dukes of Orleans and Burgundy, in council, was approved of; and the king, having agreed to it, said he would cheerfully write on the subject to the kings of Germany, Bohemia, Hungary and England; that he thought he could depend on the kings of Castille, Navarre, Arragon, Sicily, Naples and Scotland, obeying whatever pope he should acknowledge. In consequence of

this proposition being adopted, the king of France sent off special messengers with letters to the kings above mentioned, but answers were not returned to them so soon as expected.

During this interval, that learned clerk master John de Gigencourt died at the Sorbonne. The king of France, his court and the university were very sorry for the loss, as his equal was not at Paris, and he would have been of singular service in reforming the church, and bringing about an union.

At this time, there was at Avignon a clerk well skilled in science, doctor of laws, and auditor of the palace : he was a native of the Archbishoprick of Rheims, and called sir John de Varennes. He was much advanced in the church for the services he had rendered pope Clement and others, and was on the point of being a bishop or cardinal. He had also been chaplain to a cardinal, called at Avignon Saint Peter of Luxembourg.

This John de Varennes, benefited and advanced as he was, resigned all, retaining only, for his subsistence, the canonry of our Lady at Rheims, which is worth, by residence, one hundred francs ; otherwise not more than thirty. He quitted Avignon, returned to his native country, and fixed his abode at the village of Saint Lye; near Rheims, where he led a devout life, preaching the faith and works of our Lord, and praising the pope of Avignon. He declared he was the true pope, condemning, by his speeches, that of Rome. He was much attended to, and followed by the people

people, who came to see him from all countries, for the sober and holy life he led, fasting daily, and for the fine sermons he preached. Some, however, said, that the cardinals at Avignon had sent him thither to support their cause, and to exhibit the holiness of his life, which was devout enough to have entitled him to be raised to the papacy.

Master John de Varennes would not allow himself to be called the holy man of Saint Lye, but simply the Auditor. He lived with his mother, and every day said mass very devoutly. All that was given him, for he asked for nothing, he distributed in alms to the glory of God.

We will now leave him, and speak of other matters.

CHAP. XX.

**THE KING OF ENGLAND IS ADVISED TO MAKE
A JOURNEY TO IRELAND,—AND TO SETTLE
ON THE DUKE OF LANCASTER, AND HIS
HEIRS FOR EVER, THE DUCHY OF AQUITAINE
WITH ALL ITS DEPENDANCIES.**

THE truces that had been agreed to between the kings of France and England, and their allies, were well observed on sea and land. There were, however, some pillagers still in Languedoc, who came from foreign countries, such

as Gascony, Béarn and Germany. Sir John de Grailly, bastard-son to the late capital de Buch, a young and expert knight, was governor of the strong castle of Bouteville. You may suppose that the captains of such forts as Lourde in Bigorre, on the borders of Arragon, Bouteville on the frontiers of Saintonge, near la Rochelle, and Mortaign, were sorely vexed they could no longer overrun the country and make their accustomed pillage from the neighbouring towns. They had been particularly forbidden to infringe the articles of the truce, under pain of being severely punished.

At this period, an expedition against Ireland was proposed in the English council; for, in the truces king Richard had agreed to with France and her allies, young as he was, he had reserved Ireland from being included, as his predecessors had always claimed it as their right; and his grandfather, king Edward of happy memory, had signed himself king and lord of Ireland, and had continued his wars against the natives notwithstanding his pressure from other quarters. The young knights and squires of England, eager to signalize themselves in arms, were rejoiced to learn that king Richard intended leading a large power of men at arms and archers into Ireland, and that he had declared he would not return thence until he should have finally settled every thing to his satisfaction.

It was, at the same council, ordered, that the duke of Lancaster, who in his time had laboured hard

hard, on sea and land, for the augmentation of the honour of England, should make a journey to Aquitaine, with five hundred men at arms and one thousand archers. He was to embark at Plymouth or Southampton, as he pleased, and sail for Guyenne or Aquitaine. It was the intention of king Richard and his council, that the duke of Lancaster should hold in perpetuity, for himself and heirs, the whole territory of Aquitaine, with all its seneschalships and domains in such manner as king Edward of England, his father, and the former dukes of Aquitaine had held them, and which king Richard held at this moment, with the reserve of homage to the kings of England. The duke of Lancaster was to enjoy all other rights, lordships and rents, which stipulation was confirmed by the king, wholly and fully, under his seal.

The duke of Lancaster was very thankful for this magnificent gift, as he had reason to be ; for in truth, the duchy of Aquitaine has wherewithal to enable its lord to keep a grand state. The deed which was to establish this gift, having been properly engrossed, was carefully examined, and passed with great deliberation of council, in the presence of the king, his uncles the dukes of York and Gloucester, the earls of Salisbury, Arundel, and Derby (son to the duke of Lancaster), the earl marshal, the earl of Rostellant*, the earls of Northumberland and Nottingham, sir Thomas

* Rostellant. Q. Rutland.

Percy, the lords Despencer and Beaumont, sir William Arundel, the archbishops of Canterbury and York, the bishop of London, and of all those who were entitled to be present, whether prelates or barons.

The duke of Lancaster thanked, in the first place, the king his nephew, then his brothers, and the barons and prelates of the council. After which he began to make most sumptuous preparations for crossing the sea, and taking possession of the duchy the king had invested him with.

Purveyors were likewise busy in preparing, on a large scale, for the king's expedition to Ireland; and those lords who were to accompany him were ordered to make preparations of whatever things they might think necessary.

CHAP. XXI.

THE DEATH OF THE LADY ANNE OF BOHEMIA, QUEEN OF ENGLAND.—THE DUKE OF LAN- CASTER LANDS IN AQUITAINE, AND THE KING OF ENGLAND IN IRELAND.

TH E king of England and the duke of Lancaster were daily occupied in their preparations for leaving England, and had sent their men and purveyances to the different ports they were to embark from; the one to Ireland, and the other

other to Aquitaine; but their expedition was delayed for about two months by an event I will now relate.

At this period, the lady Anne, queen of England, fell sick, to the great distress of the king and her household. Her disorder increased so rapidly that she departed this life on the feasts of Whitsuntide, in the year of grace 1394. The king and all who loved her were greatly afflicted at her death. She was buried in the cathedral church of London*; but her obsequies were performed at leisure, for the king would have them magnificently done. Abundance of wax was sent for from Flanders to make flambeaux and torches, and the illumination was so great on the day of the ceremony that nothing was ever seen like to it before, not at the burial of the good queen Philippa nor of any other.

The king would have it so, because she was daughter to the king of Bohemia, emperor of Rome and of Germany. He was inconsolable for her loss, as they mutually loved each other, having been married young. This queen left no issue, for she had never borne children.

Thus in the same year were the king, the duke of Lancaster and the earl of Derby made widowers.

* On the 7th of June, queen Anne died at Shene in Surry, and was buried at Westminster. The king took her death so heavily that, besides cursing the place where she died, he did also, for anger, throw down the buildings, unto the which former kings, being weary of the city, were wont for pleasure to resort.—*Stow's Chronicle.*

There

There was no talk of the king's marrying again, for he would not hear of it. Although the expeditions to Ireland and Aquitaine were delayed by the queen's death, those lords who were named to go to Ireland did not fail continuing their preparations; and, as their purveyances were ready, they sent them across the sea to Ireland from Brisco * and Lolighet † in Wales; and the conductors were ordered to carry them to a city on the coast of Ireland, called Dimelin ‡, which had always been steadily attached to England, and was an archbishoprick; the archbishop of which place was with the king.

Soon after Saint John Baptist's day, king Richard left London, and took the road for Wales, amusing himself by hunting on the way, to forget the loss of his queen. Those ordered to attend him began their journey, such as his two uncles of York and Gloucester, with grand array, as did the other lords: the earl of Kent, half brother to the king, sir Thomas Holland, his son, the earl of Rutland, son to the duke of York, the earl marshal, the earls of Salisbury and Arundel, sir William Arundel, the earl of Northumberland, sir Thomas Percy his brother, high steward of England, the earls of Devonshire and Nottingham, with numbers of knights and squires.

A considerable body remained at home to guard the borders of Scotland; for the Scots are

* Brisco. Q. Bristol.

† Lolighet. Q. Holyhead.

‡ Dimelen. Q. Dublin.

a wicked race, and pay not any regard to truces or respites, but as it suits their own convenience.

At the time the king of England undertook this expedition, he had not the company of his other half brother, sir John Holland earl of Huntington, for he was on a pilgrimage to Jerusalem and Saint Catherine of Mount Sinai, and was to return through Hungary. Having heard at Paris, as he passed through France, where he had been handsomely treated by the king and his court, in respect to the king of England, that the king of Hungary and Amurat* were to have a battle, he declared he would not fail being present.

The duke of Lancaster and his array arrived at Plymouth, where transports waited to carry them across the sea. When his men and purveyances were all on board, they weighed anchor, and steered with a favourable wind for Bordeaux.

We will return to the king of England, who had with him full four thousand men at arms and thirty thousand archers. They were shipped at three different places, Bristol, Holyhead and Herford †, and passed over daily; but it was a month before the whole armament and their horses landed in Ireland.

On the other hand, there was in Ireland a valiant English knight, called the earl of Ormond,

* The person thus called was the sultan Bajazet I. who began his reign 1391.

† From what follows, I suppose this must mean Haverfordwest, in Pembrokeshire, as it is pronounced Harford.

who,

who, like his predecessors held lands in that country, but they were disputed, and he had made similar preparations to his ancestors.

The earl marshal had the command of the van, consisting of fifteen hundred lances and two thousand archers, who prudently and valiantly conducted themselves. King Richard and his uncles embarked at Haverford in Wales, many at Holyhead, and others at Bristol, and the whole landed without any loss. As they disembarked, by orders from the constable and marshals, they quartered themselves on the country, occupying a large uninhabited tract, of about thirty English miles, beside the city of Dublin. The army lodged themselves prudently for fear of the Irish : had they done otherwise, they would have suffered for it. The king, his uncles and prelates, were quartered in Dublin and near it ; and I was told that, during the whole campaign, they were well supplied with all sorts of provision ; for the English are expert in war, and know well how to forage and take proper care of themselves and horses. I will relate the history of this campaign of king Richard, and what befel him, according to the information I received.

CHAP. XXII.

SIR JOHN FROISSART ARRIVES IN ENGLAND,
AND IS PRESENTED TO KING RICHARD BY
THE DUKE OF YORK, UNCLE TO THE KING.

IN truth, I sir John Froissart, treasurer and canon of Chimay, in the county of Hainault and diocese of Liege, had, during my stay at Abbeville, a great desire to go and see the kingdom of England : more especially since a truce had been concluded, for four years, on sea and land, between France, England and their allies. Several reasons urged me to make this journey, but principally because in my youth I had been educated at the court of king Edward, of happy memory, and that good lady, Philippa, his queen, with their children, and others of the barons of those times, and was treated by them with all honour, courtesy and liberality.

I was anxious, therefore, to visit that country, ~~but~~ it ran in my imagination that if I once again ~~saw~~ it, I should live the longer ; for twenty-seven years past I had intentions of going thither, and if I should not meet with the lords whom I had left there, I should at least see their heirs, who would likewise be of great service to me in the verification of the many histories I have related of them.

I men-

I mentioned my purpose to my very dear patrons, the lord duke Albert of Bavaria, count of Hainault, Holland and Zealand, and lord of Frizeland ; to the lord Williatm his son, stiled count d'Ostrevant ; to my dear and much honoured lady Joan, duchess of Brabant and Luxembourg ; and to my very much respected lord Enguerrand, lord of Coucy ; as well as to that gallant knight, the lord de Gomegines. We had both, during our youth, arrived together at the English court, where I saw also the lord de Coucy, and all the nobles of France, who were hostages for the redemption of king John of France, which has been before related in this history.

The three lords above mentioned, as well as the lord de Gomegines, and madame de Brabant, on my telling them my intentions, encouraged me to persevere, and they all gave me letters of introduction to the king and his uncles, with the reserve of the lord de Coucy, who, from being now so much attached to France, could only write to his daughter, the duchess of Ireland.

I had taken care to form a collection of all the poetry on love and morality that I had composed during the last twenty-four years, which I had caused to be fairly written and illuminated. I was also incited to go to England and see king Richard, son to the noble and valiant prince of Wales and Aquitaine, whom I had not seen since the time of his christening in the cathedral church of Bordeaux. I was then present, and had intentions of accompanying the prince of Wales in his expedition

tion to Spain ; but, when we came to the city of Dax, the prince sent me back to the queen his mother in England. I was desirous, therefore, to pay my respects to the king of England and his uncles, and had provided myself with my book of poesy finely ornamented, bound in velvet, and decorated with silver gilt clasps and studs, as a present for the king. Having this intention, I spared no pains ; and the cost and labour seem trifling to people, whenever they undertake anything willingly.

Having provided myself with horses, I crossed from Calais to Dover on the 12th day of July ; but found no one there whom I had been acquainted with in my former journeys : the inns were all kept by new people, and the children of my former acquaintance were become men and women. I staid half a day and night to refresh myself and horses ; and on Wednesday, by nine o'clock, arrived at Canterbury to visit the shrine of Saint Thomas and the tomb of the late prince of Wales, who had been buried there with great pomp.

I heard high mass, made my offering at the shrine, and returned to my inn to dinner, when I heard the king was to come the following day in pilgrimage to St. Thomas of Becket. He was lately returned from Ireland, where he had remained for nine months, or thereabouts, and was anxious to pay his devotions in this church, on account of the holy body of the Saint, and because his father was there buried. I thought, therefore,

fore, it would be well to wait his arrival, which I did ; and, on the morrow, the king came in great state, accompanied by lords and ladies, with whom I mixed ; but they were all new faces to me, for I did not remember one of them.

Times and persons had greatly changed since I was last in England, eight and twenty years past. The king had not either of his uncles with him : the duke of Lancaster was in Aquitaine, and the dukes of York and Gloucester in other parts. I was at first quite astonished, and should have been comforted could I have seen an ancient knight who had been of the bed-chamber to king Edward, and was in the same capacity to the present king, as well as of his privy council, and could I have made myself known to him. The name of this knight was sir Richard Sturry. I asked if he were alive : they said he was, but not then present, as he was at his residence in London.

I then determined to address myself to sir Thomas Percy, high steward of England. I found him gracious and of agreeable manners, and he offered to present me and my letters to the king. I was rejoiced at this promise ; for it is necessary to have friends to introduce one to so great a prince as the king of England. He went to the king's apartments to see if it were a proper time, but found the king had retired to repose : he therefore bade me return to my inn. When I thought the king might be risen, I went again to the palace of the archbishop, where he lodged ; but sir Thomas Percy and his people were preparing to set

set out for Ospringe, whence he had come that morning. I asked sir Thomas's advice how to act: 'For the present,' he said, 'do not make further attempts to announce your arrival, but follow the king; and I will take care, when he comes to his palace in this county, which he will do in two days, that you shall be well lodged as long as the court tarries there.'

The king was going to a beautiful palace in the county of Kent, called Leeds Castle, and I followed sir Thomas Percy's advice by taking the road to Ospringe. I lodged at an inn where I found a gallant knight of the king's chamber, but he had that morning staid behind on account of a slight pain in his head that had seized him the preceding night. This knight, whose name was sir William de Lisle, seeing I was a foreigner and a Frenchman (for all who speak the language of Oil are by the English considered as Frenchmen, whatever country they may come from), made acquaintance with me, and I with him, for the English are courteous to strangers.

He asked my situation and business in England, which I related to him at length, as well as what sir Thomas Percy had advised me to do. He replied, that I could not have had better advice, for that the king would on Friday be at Leeds castle, and would find there his uncle the duke of York. I was well pleased to hear this, for I had letters to the duke, and, when young, was known to him while in the household of the late king and queen.

I courted the acquaintance of sir William de Lisle, as a means of gaining greater intimacy with the king's household. On the Friday, we rode out together, and on the road I asked if he had accompanied the king on his expedition to Ireland. He said he had. I then asked if there were any foundation in truth for what was said of Saint Patrick's hole*. He replied there was; and that he

and

• • Nothing has rendered this county (Donegal) so famous as the cave discovered by the patron saint of Ireland, or his namesake, abbot of Nevers, about four hundred years after, in which the holy monk obtained a constant exhibition of the torments of the wicked, for the edification of the Irish. But that it could not be Saint Patrick who first invented it, is plain from his silence about it in his book 'de tribus habitaculis,' heaven, earth and hell. Henry or Hugh, monk of Saltrey, in Huntingdonshire, was the first who wrote about it, and what one Owen or Tyndal, a soldier, had seen there. It was about sixteen feet and a half long, by two feet one inch wide, built of free stone, covered with broad flags, and green turf laid over them, and was so low and narrow, that a tall man could hardly fit, much less stand in it. In the side was a window just wide enough to admit a faint ray of light: in the floor a cavity capable of containing a man at his length; and, under a large stone at the end of the pavement, a deep pit, which had opened at the prayers of the saint. The bottom of the cave was originally much below the surface of the ground. It stood on the east side of the church, in the church-yard, encompassed with a wall, and surrounded by circles or cells, called *the beds*, scarcely three feet high, denominated from several saints. The penitents, who visited this island, after fasting on bread and water for nine days, and making processions round these holy stations thrice a-day barefoot, for the first seven days, and six times on the eighth, washing their weary limbs each night in the adjoining lake, on the ninth enter the cave

and another knight, during the king's stay at Dublin, had been there. They entered it at sunset, remained there the whole night, and came out at sun-rise the next morning. I requested he would tell me whether he saw all the marvellous things which are said to be seen there. He made me the following answer: 'When I and my companion had passed the entrance of the cave,

cave. Here they observe a twenty-four hours fast, tasting only a little water, and, upon quitting it, bathe in the lake, and so conclude the solemnity. The original preparatory fast, as we learn from Matthew Paris, was fifteen days, and as long after quitting the cave, out of which all who entered did not return.

'Leave being first obtained of the bishop of the diocese, the prior represented to the penitents all the horror and difficulty of the undertaking, suggesting to them at the same time an easier penance. If they persevered in their resolution, they were conducted to the door with a procession from the convent, and, after twenty-four hours confinement, let out next morning with the like ceremony. In this recess, enlightened only by a kind of twilight, which discovered a field and hall, Owen was first visited by fifteen persons clothed in white, like religious newly shorn, who encouraged him against the horrid scenes that were next to present themselves to his view. They were succeeded by troops of demons, who began with laying him on a burning pile, which he soon extinguished, by pronouncing the name of Christ. They then dragged him through the several scenes of torment, where the wicked suffered all the variety of tortures of ancient Tartarus; and, standing proof against all these horrors, he was favoured with a full view and description of paradise, by two venerable prelates, who refused to let him stay there. He met with the same demons and monks as he went out of the cave after which he visited the holy sepulchre, and, at his return, taking upon him the habit, assisted in founding Besmagovcifth abbey.—*Gough's Addition to Camden*, p. 641. vol. 3.

called the Purgatory of Saint Patrick, we descended three or four steps, (for you go down into it like a cellar) but found our heads so much affected by the heat, we seated ourselves on the steps, which are of stone, and such a drowsiness came on, that we slept there the whole night.

I asked, if, when asleep, they knew where they were, and what visions they had. He said, they had many very strange dreams, and they seemed, as they imagined, to see more than they would have done if they had been in their beds. This they both were assured of. ‘ When morning came, and we were awake, the door of the cave was opened, for so we had ordered it, and we came out, but instantly lost all recollection of every thing we had seen, and looked on the whole as a phantom.’

I did not push the conversation further, although I should have much liked to have heard what he would say of Ireland; but other knights overtook us, and conversed with him; and thus we rode to Leeds castle, where the king and his court arrived shortly after. The duke of York was already there; and I made myself known to him, by presenting him letters from his cousins, the count of Hainault and the count d’Ostrevant. The duke recollect ed me, and made me a hearty welcome, saying,—‘ Sir John, keep with us and our people; for we will shew you every courtesy and attention: we are bounden so to do, from remembrance of past times, and affection to the memory of our lady-mother, to whom you were attached. We have not forgotten these times.’ I warmly thanked him,

Him, as was just, for his kind speech, and was well noticed by him, sir Thomas Percy and sir William de Lisle, who carried me to the king's chamber, where I was introduced to him by his uncle, the duke of York.

The king received me graciously and kindly : he took all the letters I presented to him, and, having read them attentively, said I was welcome, and that since I had belonged to the household of the late king and queen, his grandfather and grandmother, I must consider myself still as of the royal household of England. This day I did not offer him the book I had brought ; for sir Thomas Percy told me it was not a fit opportunity, as he was much occupied with serious business.

The council was deeply engaged on two subjects ; first, in respect to the negotiation with France, to treat of a marriage between the king and the lady Isabella, eldest daughter to the king of France, who at that time was about eight years old. The ambassadors appointed to make this proposal to France, were the earl of Rutland, cousin-german to the king, the earl marshal, the archbishop of Dublin, the bishop of Lyc, the lord Clifford, lord Beaumont, lord Hugh Spencer, and several others *.

* See the *Fœdera* for full particulars. The ambassadors were the archbishop of Dublin, the bishop of Saint David's, the earl of Rutland, the earl marshal and sir William Scrope. They were to propose also a marriage between the earl of Rutland and the youngest daughter of the king of France.

The instructions to these ambassadors are dated 'Leeds castle, 8th day of July 1395.'

Secondly, the lord de la Barde, the lord de la Taride, the lord de Pinterne, the lord de Châteauneuf, the lords de Levesque and de Copane, the chief magistrates of Bordeaux, Bayonne and Dax, were come to England, and greatly persecuted the king, since his return from Ireland, for an answer to their petitions and remonstrances, on the gift the king had made his uncle, the duke of Lancaster, of all Aquitaine, with its lordships, baronies and dependances, which had appertained to the king and crown of England. The above-mentioned lords, and principal cities and towns in Aquitaine, maintained that such a gift could not be made, and that it was null; for that the whole of Aquitaine was a fief depending solely on the crown of England, and that they would never consent thus to be disjoined from it. They had made several reasonable propositions for an accommodation, which I will relate in proper time and place.

In order that these matters might be more fully considered, and indeed they required it, the king had summoned the principal barons and prelates of the realm to meet him on Magdalen-day, at his palace of Eltham, seven miles from London, and the same distance from Dartford. On the fourth day after the king's arrival, when I learnt that he, his council and the duke of York were about to quit Leeds castle and go to Rochester, in their way to Eltham, I set out in their company.

CHAP. XXIII.

THE INFORMATION FROISSART GAINS IN ENGLAND, TOUCHING THE OPPOSITION OF THE INHABITANTS OF AQUITAINE TO THE GIFT THE KING OF ENGLAND HAD MADE OF IT TO HIS UNCLE THE DUKE OF LANCASTER.—THE COMMISSIONERS SENT TO REMONSTRATE ON THE MATTER WITH THE KING CANNOT OBTAIN A DECISIVE ANSWER RELATIVE THERETO.

ON the road to Rochester, I asked sir William de Lisle and sir John de Grailly, governor of Bouteville, the cause of the king's journey to London, and why the parliament was to be assembled at Eltham. They both answered me satisfactorily; but sir John Grailly particularly informed me why the lords of Gascony, and the deputies from the chief towns were come to England. He was so well acquainted with them, being as it were from the same country and fellow-subject to England, that they hid nothing from him. He said, 'that when the duke of Lancaster came last to Aquitaine, he was provided with deeds sealed with the great seal of England, which had been regularly agreed to in parliament and signed by the dukes of York and Gloucester to whom Aquitaine might possibly revert, by succession, to king Richard of England, who had no children,

and these two dukes were brothers german, by father and mother, to the duke of Lancaster.

' The duke of Lancaster sent part of his council to Bordeaux, to inform the mayor and magistrates of his coming and the cause of it. They were greatly surprised on hearing it ; but, notwithstanding, they well feasted the commissioners he had sent, in honour to the king, to whom they owed service and obedience. They desired time to consider of their answer, which being granted, they replied, that the duke of Lancaster, as son to king Edward of happy memory, who had been their lord, was welcome, but not in any other capacity, as they had not as yet sufficiently weighed the matter to determine on receiving him as their lord ; for their sovereign, king Richard, to whom they had sworn fealty, had not acquitted them of their obedience. The duke's commissioners replied, that as to this, the duke would take upon himself to satisfy them they should never have any trouble from his nephew the king of England.

When those of Bordeaux saw themselves thus hardly pressed, they made another excuse by saying,—' Gentlemen, the grant we perceive includes not only us but the cities of Bayonne and Dax, and the prelates and barons of Gascony who are under the obedience of the king of England. Go to them, and as they shall regulate we will do the same.' The commissioners, not being able to get any other answer, left Bordeaux, and returned to the duke of Lancaster at Libourne.

' When

‘ When the duke heard the above answer, he became very thoughtful, and foresaw that the business he was come upon would not be so soon settled as he had at first imagined, or had been made to understand. He sent, however, his commissioners to Bayonne, who were received by the Bayonnois in just the same manner as they had been received at Bourdeaux, nor could they obtain a different answer.

‘ At length, the prelates, barons and deputies from all the towns of Gascony under the obedience of England, assembled, and, having debated the justice of the king of England’s grant to the duke of Lancaster, came to the following conclusion. They were very willing to receive in their castles, cities and towns, the duke of Lancaster, as son to the noble king Edward of happy memory, and as uncle to king Richard of England ; but on condition he would solemnly swear, that himself and people would peaceably demean themselves during their stay, and that they would not take any thing by force, but pay ready money for whatever they might want ; nor should he, the duke of Lancaster, extend the powers of the crown to oppress any one, nor do so by other means.

‘ The duke replied, that he was not come to hurt or oppress the people, but, on the contrary, to guard and defend them as his own inheritance, and entreated that the will of the king of England should be complied with. But the country, with one voice, declared they would not be disjoined from the crown of England, and that it was not in

in the power of the king of England thus to turn them over to another,

‘ This matter was disputed for a long time between the duke of Lancaster and the Gascons ; and, when he saw he could not prevail on them to receive him as their lord, he requested they would send sufficiently-authorised persons to the king of England, as he would do on his part, and whatever the parliament of England should determine, whether in his favour or not, he would abide by.

‘ The Gascons, thinking this a very reasonable proposal from the duke, agreed to it ; and he then came, with his attendants, to reside among them, at his former lodgings in the abbey of Saint Andrew. The prelates and barons of Gascony, as well as the cities of Bayonne and Dax, selected proper commissioners to send to England.

‘ When the king of France, his uncles and ministers, heard for certain that the duke of Lancaster had been peaceably received in Bourdeaux, and that he had there fixed his residence, they knew not what to think of it, nor whether he would adhere to the truces that had been made between France and England. This gave them so much uneasiness, that they resolved to send ambassadors to the duke of Lancaster to learn his intentions. The lord Boucicaut, marshal of France, sir John de Châteaumorant and sir John Barrois des Barres, were chosen for this purpose, and they were to have under their command one thousand well appointed men at arms. They left Paris, and continued their march to Agen, where they quartered

tered themselves as well as in the surrounding country ; they then sent heralds and messengers to the duke of Lancaster, in the city of Bordeaux, to notify their wishes to speak with him.

‘ The duke made the messengers good cheer, heard what they had to say, and wrote back to their lords, that since they were desirous to speak with him, he was as anxious to meet them ; and, in order to give them less trouble, would go to Bergerac, where they would confer together. The messengers, on their return to Agen, gave their lords the letter from the duke of Lancaster, which satisfied them as to their safety, and they made preparations accordingly. As soon as they heard of the duke’s arrival at Bergerac, they left the city of Agen, and marched thither, where they found the gates open to receive them. The lords entered the town, and went to the hôtels which had been prepared for them ; but their men lodged themselves in the suburbs and adjacent villages. The three lords waited on the duke of Lancaster, who kindly received them, as he knew well how to do ; and, in reply to what they urged, he said, ‘ that he wished to be always a good neighbour, and on friendly terms with the king and realm of France, and to adhere to every article of the truces that had been lately made between France, England and their allies. He had been very active in forming these truces, and of course would be unwilling any way to infringe them ; and of this they might be perfectly assured.’

‘ The

The answer of the duke was highly gratifying to the French lords, who remained with him on the most friendly terms. He entertained them grandly at dinner and supper in the castle of Bergerac, after which they separated in a very amicable manner. The duke returned to Bordeaux, and the French lords towards Paris; but in their way they met the duke of Berry in Poitiers, to whom they related all they had done, and the duke of Lancaster's answer. The duke of Berry thought it satisfactory and reasonable, as did the king of France and the duke of Burgundy, when the three lords reported it to them, on their arrival at Paris. Things remained on this assurance quiet. What after happened I have told you,' added sir John de Grailly; ' for the duke of Lancaster sent hither some of the principal of his council, such as sir William de la Perriere, sir Peter Cliqueton, and two doctors of laws, master John Huche and master John Richards de Lincestre, to plead his cause before the king, his uncles and council.* It is for this reason the king is now going to Eltham; for as Thursday next is Magdalen-day, the parliament will meet there. What decision they will come to, I cannot say, but this I know, that the duke of Gloucester will be present, and be violent in his support of the duke of Lancaster's claims; for I have heard, from some of the English who

* Hollingshead calls them sir William Perreer,—sir Peter Clifton,—master John Huich,—and master John Richards, a canon of Leicester.

ought to know, that he would cheerfully see his brother firmly established in Guyenne, and never to return to England, for he finds him his superior, and for this reason is desirous he should gain the duchy of Aquitaine. The duke of Gloucester has a good head, but is proud, and wonderfully overbearing in his manners. Let him say or act as he pleases, he is always popular with the commonalty, for they are mutually attached to each other. He was the cause of the execution of that valiant knight sir Simon Burley. He it was, likewise, who caused the banishment of the duke of Ireland, the archbishop of York and other knights of the king's council, who were either put to death on very slight grounds, or forced into foreign countries, during the time the duke of Lancaster, who is more feared than loved in this country, was in Castille.

'Let us for the present,' said sir John de Grailly, 'quit this matter, and speak of the second object that occupies the council. It seems to me, from what I have seen and heard, that the king of England wishes to marry again, and has had researches made every where, but in vain, for a suitable lady. If the duke of Burgundy or count of Hainault had daughters of a proper age, he would not be averse to either; but they have none that are not already betrothed. He has been told that the king of Navarre has sisters and daughters, but he will not hear of them. The duke of Gloucester has likewise a grown up girl and marriageable, and he would be well pleased if his nephew would choose her; but

but the king says, she is too nearly related, being his cousin-german. King Richard's thoughts are so bent on the eldest daughter of the king of France, he will not hear of any other : it causes great wonder in this country that he should be so eager to marry the daughter of his adversary, and he is not the better beloved for it. This he seems indifferent to, and plainly shews that henceforward he will prefer war with any country rather than with France. It is known from experience how anxious he was that a stable peace should be established between the two countries ; for he said the wars had lasted too long between him and his predecessors with France, and that too many valiant men had been slain on both sides, to the great weakening of the defenders of the Christian faith.

To put this idea out of the king's mind, for it is no way agreeable to the people of England that he should connect himself by marriage with France, they have told him the lady was by far too young, and that for five or six years to come she would not be of a proper age for a wife. He replied by saying, that every day she would increase in age. In addition to this, he gave pleasantly his reasons for his preferring her, that since she was so young, he should educate her, and bring her up to his own mind, and to the manners of the English, and that for himself he was young enough to wait until she should be of a proper age for his wife. Nothing can make him change this resolution, and before you leave this country, you may perhaps witness many strange things.

It

It is for this and the other business I mentioned that he is journeying towards London.'

With such conversation did sir John de Grailly entertain me while travelling between Rochester and Dartford. He was the bastard-son of that gallant knight the captal de Buch. I eagerly listened to all he said, and treasured his words in my memory; for I rode chiefly in his company, and with sir William de Lisle, the whole way from Leeds castle to Eltham.

The king arrived at Eltham on a Tuesday. On the Wednesday, the lords came from all parts. There were the duke of Gloucester, the earls of Derby, Arundel, Northumberland, Kent, Rutland, the earl marshal, the archbishops of Canterbury and of York, the bishops of London and of Winchester: in short, all who had been summoned arrived at Eltham on the Thursday, by eight o'clock in the morning.

The parliament was holden in the king's apartment, in the presence of the king, his uncles and council. The knights from Gascony and the deputies from the cities and towns, as well as those sent by the duke of Lancaster, were present.

I cannot say what passed at this parliament, for I was not admitted, nor were any but the members of it. It sat for upwards of four hours. When it was over, I renewed my acquaintance after dinner with an ancient knight whom in my youth I well knew, when he was of the chamber of king Edward. He was now one of the principal advisers

advisers of king Richard, and deserving of it: his name was sir Richard Seury*. He immediately recollects me, though it was twenty-four years since we had seen each other; the last time was at Colleberge †, at Brussels, in the hôtel of duke Winceslaus and the duchess Jane of Brabant.

Sir Richard Sturry seemed very glad to see me, and made me a hearty welcome. He asked many questions, which I answered as fully and as well as I could. While we were walking near the king's apartment at Eltham, I inquired if he could inform me what had been the determination of the parliament: having mused awhile, he said he would tell me, for it was not worth while to conceal what must shortly be made public.

' You know,' continued the knight, ' or have heard, that the duke of Lancaster left England for Aquitaine, on receiving the magnificent gift the king our lord made him. The king loves all who pretend friendship for him, but particularly the duke of Lancaster; and out of gratitude, which he strongly feels, for the great services the duke has done the crown, as well on this as on the other side of the sea, the king has given him and to his

* This knight is called sir Richard Seury,—Scury,—Sevry, but I imagine it must be sir Richard Sturry, who was one of king Richard's favourites, and has been mentioned during the reign of Edward III.

† Colleberge. I do not understand this passage, for the town of Colberg is in the duchy of Pomerania. It never could have been there they met. There is a full stop at the end of Colleberge in the printed and MS. copies: the MSS. say fourteen years instead of twenty-four.

heirs for ever the whole of the duchy of Aquitaine, with all its dependancies, excepting the homage, which is the sole thing he has reserved for the crown of England in times to come. This gift has gone through every legal form, with the approbation and consent of his other uncles and the English parliament. The king has specially commanded all his subjects within the boundaries of Aquitaine, to obey punctually his well-beloved uncle the duke of Lancaster as their sovereign lord, and to pay him homage and service, in the usual manner as they have done to their lords in former times. Should any prove rebellious to these orders, the king gives the duke of Lancaster full powers to punish such within three days after their disobedience, without any expectation of support from him.

It has happened, however, that notwithstanding these strict orders of the king, the barons, knights, gentlemen, cities and towns of Gascony, under the obedience of England, have united together in opposition to the duke of Lancaster and refuse to obey him, declaring and maintaining that the gift the king made his uncle of Lancaster is null and void. The duke, who is desirous of acting in this business by fair means, has listened to their reasonings on the subject, and advised, to prevent further mischief, that they should send hither properly-instructed persons to lay their complaints before the king, and declare their reasons for having opposed his orders.

‘ They have certainly this day very ably explained the cause of refusing their obedience to the duke of Lancaster, and have given the king and his council enough to think upon. They will probably succeed in their mission, and I will tell you my reasons for so thinking ; but you will keep them secret, until the matter shall become more public.’ I replied, that he might depend on my doing it. He then continued ; ‘ I believe it was the official of Bordeaux, who, for his learning was their spokesman : he began by shewing their procurations from the different towns, that greater faith might be given to what he should say. He then declared, that the cities of Bordeaux, Bayonne, Dax, and all the lordships dependant on them, or within their limits and jurisdictions, are of such noble condition, that no king of England, by any act of his, can disjoin them from the domain of the crown of England, nor alienate or dispose of them to any child, uncle or brother he may have, nor by any way of marriage-settlement nor otherwise. The above-named towns have received, from different kings of England, certain privileges, which their successors have sworn to maintain without any infringement ; and the moment a king of England comes into possession of the crown of England and its dependancies, he swears, on the missal in his hand, to preserve inviolate all their privileges, which you, dear sir, have also done, as these papers will prove. He then produced charters, fairly engrossed and sealed with the great seal of England, which king

Richard,

Richard, who was then present, had given them, and read the whole, clause by clause.

The contents of the charters were well understood, for they were in Latin and French; and at the end he named several great barons and prelates, to the number of eleven, who had been nominated as sureties.

When the papers were read, each lord looked at his neighbour and to the king, but not one said a word in reply. The official, having finished reading his deeds, thus spoke, addressing himself to the king: ‘Most beloved and renowned sovereign, and you, my dear lords, all what you have just heard, am I charged by the deputies of the principal towns and inhabitants of Gascony to lay before you, and to maintain their dependance solely on the crown of England, as the charters that have been shewn plainly declare. Should the country be inclined to receive the duke of Lancaster for its lord, and be freed from the service and homage it owes you, the loss would be very great to England; for if, at this moment, the duke is attached to the king, and attentive to preserve the privileges of the crown of England, that love and affection will, in course of time, be much weakened by his successive heirs, and by intermarriages that may take place: it is necessary that marriages should be concluded between great princes, for the more effectually preserving the love of their subjects. Now it may happen, in times to come, that the heirs of the duke of Lancaster shall unite themselves by marriage with the

daughters of the kings of France, the dukes of Berry, Brittany, the counts of Foix or of Armagnac, the kings of Navarre, the dukes of Anjou or of Maine, and form alliances with their connections on the other side of the sea, claiming the whole sovereignty of Guyenne, and ruining the country, by putting it in opposition to England.

‘The king of England would probably, in such a case, have great difficulty in recovering the rights due to the crown. Condescend, therefore, most noble king, and you, my dear lords, to consider well all the reasons I have laid before you; for the whole country is unanimous and determined to remain under the obedience of our much redoubted lord and king, and in dependance on the crown of England.’ The official here ended his speech; and the prelates and lords, looking to each other, approached the king, conducted by his two uncles and the earls of Derby and Arundel.

‘It was then suggested to those who had come from Aquitaine, to leave the chamber until called for, which they did, with the two knights who had been sent by the duke of Lancaster. This being done, the king demanded from the prelates and barons what answer should be made. The prelates referred the answer to the two uncles of the king, because the matter more nearly affected them. At first, they excused themselves, saying, it was a public concern, and should be deliberated on in common, and not treated as any matter of favour. The business

business thus remained for some time ; but the duke of Gloucester being desired to give his opinion, he said, it would be a strong measure to take from the king a gift that he had made with the unanimous consent of his council, and that had been invested with every legal form, because his subjects were rebellious ; that the king was not lord of his inheritance if he could not dispose of it as he pleased. Some commented on this speech, while others had the courage to say the answer was not reasonable, though they dared not contradict it ; for the duke of Gloucester was much feared.

‘ The earl of Derby, son of the duke of Lancaster, added, ‘ Good uncle, you have well spoken, and justly explained the matter, and I support what you have said.’ The council on this began to separate, and to murmur one to another ; but they did not call in the envoys from Guyenne, nor those from the duke of Lancaster.’

Here the old knight ended the conversation ; but I learnt from him afterwards, that when the king heard this, he dissembled his opinion, with the intention of again summoning his council after dinner, to know if any measures, more to the advantage of the crown, should be adopted, or if any thing further should be done in respect to Aquitaine.

The king made the archbishop of Canterbury speak on the business of his marriage, as he had ordered him in the morning, and who should be sent to France, for he was very earnest that this matter should be accomplished. It had before

been in debate, and was nearly agreed to, and those were named who were to cross the sea, although their instructions had not been given to them. In this council it was ordered, that the archbishop of Dublin, the earl of Rutland, the earl marshal, the lord Beaumont, sir Hugh Spencer, sir Lewis Clifford, to the number of twenty knights and forty squires of honour, should wait on the king of France and propose a treaty of marriage between the king of England and the lady Isabella, his daughter, who might then be about eight years old. She had been betrothed before to the duke of Brittany's son, as you have seen when the meeting took place, and peace was made between the king of France and the duke of Brittany, at Tours. To break this would be difficult, for the king of France and his uncles had put their seals to the treaty.

Notwithstanding this obstacle, the English ambassadors, having received their instructions, left London, and, crossing the sea at Dover, arrived in two or three days at Calais. They staid there five days to refresh themselves and their horses, and then departed, taking the road to Amiens, having sent before the Irish herald March, who had brought them passports from the king of France on his return to Calais. The lord de Monchourel * was also sent as a guide, and to have all cities and towns opened to them, as well as to provide for what they might want. We will

* Monchourel. In the MSS. Mont-caurel.

leave them for a little, and return to the matters we were before speaking of.

As I have mentioned, the deputies from Gascony and from the chief towns in Aquitaine were earnest in their solicitations to the king and council that they might remain attached to the crown of England, according to their ancient rights and privileges, which it had been repeatedly sworn should be observed, in spite of every cause, obstacle or condition to the contrary. Three parts of the council, and the unanimous voice of the people of England, were on their side; but Thomas of Woodstock, duke of Gloucester, youngest son to the late king Edward, opposed them, and plainly shewed he wished his brother of Lancaster to be detained in Aquitaine, for he felt he was too powerful when in England, and too nearly allied to the king. As for his brother of York, he held him cheap, for he interfered little in public affairs, and was without malice or guile, wishing only to live in quiet: he had beside just married a young and beautiful wife, daughter to the earl of Kent, with whom he spent most of his time which was not occupied with other amusements.

The duke of Gloucester was cunning and malicious, and continually soliciting favours from his nephew king Richard, pleading poverty, though he abounded in wealth; for he was constable of England, duke of Gloucester, earl of Buckingham, Essex and Northampton. He had beside pensions on the king's exchequer, to the amount of four thousand nobles a-year; and he would not exert

himself in any way to serve his king or country, if he were not well paid for it. He was violently adverse to those of Aquitaine in this business, and did every thing in his power that the duke of Lancaster might not return to England, for then he would have every thing his own way.

To shew that he governed the king and was the greatest in the council, as soon as he had delivered his opinion and saw that many were murmuring at it, and that the prelates and lords were discussing it in small parties, he quitted the king's chamber followed by the earl of Derby, and entered the hall at Eltham, where he ordered a table to be spread, and they both sat down to dinner while the others were debating the business. When the duke of York heard they were at dinner, he joined them. After their dinner, which took no long time, the duke of Gloucester, dissembling his thoughts, took leave of the king as he was seated at table, mounted his horse, and returned to London. The earl of Derby remained that and the ensuing day with the king and the lords, but those from Aquitaine could not procure any answer to their petitions.

CHAP. XXIV.

FROISSART PRESENTS HIS BOOK OF LOVE POEMS TO KING RICHARD OF ENGLAND.—HE RELATED WHAT HE HAD HEARD OF THE LAST EXPEDITION OF THE ENGLISH TO IRELAND.

I HAVE taken much pleasure in detailing every thing relative to the dispute with Gascony and Aquitaine, that the truth of my history may be apparent; and because I, the author of it, could not be present in these councils, that ancient and valiant knight sir Richard Sturry told me every thing, word for word, as I have transcribed. On the Sunday, the whole council were gone to London, excepting the duke of York, who remained with the king, and sir Richard Sturry: these two, in conjunction with sir Thomas Percy, mentioned me again to the king, who desired to see the book I had brought for him. I presented it to him in his chamber, for I had it with me, and laid it on his bed. He opened and looked into it with much pleasure. He ought to have been pleased, for it was handsomely written and illuminated, and bound in crimson-velvet, with ten silver gilt studs, and roses of the same in the middle, with two large clasps of silver gilt, richly worked with roses in the center.

The king asked me what the book treated of: I replied, ‘ Of love ! ’ He was pleased with the answer,

fwer, and dipped into several places, reading pa aloud, for he read and spoke French perfet well, and then gave it to one of his knights, cal fir Richard Credon, to carry to his oratory, : made me many acknowledgments for it,

It happened this same Sunday, after the ki had received my book so handsomely, an Engl squire, being in the king's chamber, called Hei Castide*, a man of prudence and character, a who spoke French well, made acquaintance w me, because he saw the king and lords give me hearty a reception, and had likewise noticed t book I had presented to the king: he also in gined, from his first conversation, that I was historian; indeed, he had been told so by Richard Sturry. He thus addressed me: ‘ John, have you as yet found any one to give y an account of the late expedition to Ireland, a how four kings of that country submitted thel selves to the obedience of the king?’ I replie that I had not. ‘ I will tell it you then,’ said t squire, who might be about fifty years old, ‘ order that, when you are returned home, you m at your leisure insert it in your history, to be h in perpetual remembrance.’ I was delighted hear this, and offered him my warmest thanks.

Henry Castide thus began: ‘ It is not in the m tory of man that any king of England ever l so large an armament of men at arms and arche

* Castide. The MSS. Crifteed. Stowe, Henry Crift
Sauvage afterwards calls him Criftele.

to make war on the Irish, as the present king. He remained upwards of nine months in Ireland, at great expense, which, however, was chearfully defrayed by his kingdom; for the principal cities and towns of England thought it was well laid out, when they saw their king return home with honour. Only gentlemen and archers had been employed on this expedition; and there were with the king four thousand knights and squires and thirty thousand archers, all regularly paid every week, and so well they were satisfied.

'To tell you the truth, Ireland is one of the worst countries to make war in, or to conquer; for there are such impenetrable and extensive forests, lakes and bogs, there is no knowing how to pass them, and carry on war advantageously: it is so thinly inhabited, that, whenever the Irish please; they desert the towns, and take refuge in these forests, and live in huts made of boughs, like wild beasts; and whenever they perceive any parties advancing with hostile dispositions, and about to enter their country, they fly to such narrow passes; it is impossible to follow them. When they find a favourable opportunity to attack their enemies to advantage, which frequently happens, from their knowledge of the country, they fail not to seize it; and no man at arms, be he ever so well mounted, can overtake them, so light are they on foot. Sometimes they leap from the ground behind a horse-man, and embrace the rider (for they are very

strong

strong in their arms) so tightly, that he can no way get rid of them.

The Irish have pointed knives, with broad blades, sharp on both sides like a dart-head, with which they kill their enemies; but they never consider them as dead until they have cut their throats like sheep, opened their bellies and taken out their hearts, which they carry off with them, and some say, who are well acquainted with their manners, that they devour them as delicious morsels. They never accept of ransom for their prisoners, and when they find they have not the advantage in any skirmishes, they instantly separate, and hide themselves in hedges, bushes, or holes under ground, so that they seem to disappear, no one knows whither.

Sir William Windsor, who has longer made war in Ireland than any other English knight, has never been able, during his residence among them, to learn correctly their manners, nor the condition of the Irish people. They are a very hardy race, of great subtlety, and of various tempers, paying no attention to cleanliness, nor to any gentleman, although their country is governed by kings, of whom there are several, but seem desirous to remain in the savage state they have been brought up in.

True it is, that four of the most potent kings in Ireland have submitted to the king of England, but more through love and good humour, than by battle or force, The earl of Ormond, whose lands

lands join their kingdoms, took great pains to induce them to go to Dublin, where the king our lord resided, and to submit themselves to him and to the crown of England.

‘ This was considered by every one as a great acquisition, and the object of the armament accomplished; for, during the whole of king Edward’s reign, of happy memory, he had never such success as king Richard. The honour is great, but the advantage little, for with such savages nothing can be done. I will tell you an instance of their savageness, that it may serve as an example to other nations. You may depend on its truth; for I was an eye-witness of what I shall relate, as they were about a month under my care and governance at Dublin, to teach them the usages of England, by orders of the king and council, because I knew their language as well as I did French and English, for in my youth I was educated among them; and earl Thomas, father of the present earl of Ormond, kept me with him, out of affection, for my good horsemanship.

‘ It happened that the earl above mentioned was sent with three hundred lances and one thousand archers to make war on the Irish; for the English had kept up a constant warfare against them, in hopes of bringing them under their subjection. The earl of Ormond, whose lands bordered on his opponents, had that day mounted me on one of his best horses, and I rode by his side. The Irish having formed an ambuscade to surprise the English, advanced from it; but were so sharply

attacked by the archers, whose arrows they could not withstand, for they are not armed against them, that they soon retreated. The earl pursued them, and I, who was well mounted, kept close by him: it chanced that in this pursuit my horse took fright, and ran away with me, in spite of all my efforts, into the midst of the enemy. My friends could never overtake me; and, in passing through the Irish, one of them, by a great feat of agility, leaped on the back of my horse, and held me tight with both his arms, but did me no harm with lance or knife. He pressed my horse forward for more than two hours, and conducted him to a large bush, in a very retired spot, where he found his companions who had run thither to escape the English.

~~X~~ ‘He seemed much rejoiced to have made me his prisoner, and carried me to his house, which was strong, and in a town surrounded with wood, palisades and stagnant water: the name of this town was Herpelin*. The gentlemen who had taken me was called Brin Coferet †, a very handsome man. I have frequently made inquiries after him, and hear that he is still alive, but very old. This Bryan Coferet kept me with him seven years, and gave me his daughter in marriage, by whom I have two girls. I will tell you how I obtained my liberty. It happened in the seventh year of my captivity, that one of their kings, Arthur Mac-

* Herpelin. in MSS. Herpelepin.

† Brin Coferet. Q. Bryan Coferet.

que-

quemaire, king of Leinster, raised an army against Lionel duke of Clarence, son to king Edward of England, and both armies met very near the city of Leinster. In the battle that followed, many were slain and taken on both sides; but, the English gaining the day, the Irish were forced to fly, and the king of Leinster escaped. The father of my wife was made prisoner, under the banner of the duke of Clarence; and as Bryan Costeret was mounted on my horse, which was remembered to have belonged to the earl of Ormond, it was then first known that I was alive, that he had honourably entertained me at his house in Herpelin, and given me his daughter in marriage.

' The duke of Clarence, sir William Windsor, and all of our party, were well pleased to hear this news, and he was offered his liberty, on condition that he gave me mine, and sent me to the English army, with my wife and children. He at first refused the terms, from his love to me, his daughter and our children; but, when he found no other terms would be accepted, he agreed to them, provided my eldest daughter remained with him. I returned to England with my wife and youngest daughter, and fixed my residence at Bristol. My two children are married: the one established in Ireland has three boys and two girls, and her sister four sons and two daughters:

' Because the Irish language is as familiar to me as English, for I have always spoken it in my family, and introduce it among my grandchildren as much as I can, I have been chosen by our lord and

and king to teach and accustom the four Irish kings, who have sworn obedience for ever to England, to the manners of the English. I must say, that these kings who were under my management were of coarse manners and understandings; and, in spite of all that I could do to soften their language and nature, very little progress has been made, for they would frequently return to their former coarse behaviour.

' I will more particularly relate the charge that was given me over them, and how I managed it. The king of England intended these four kings should adopt the manners, appearance and dress of the English, for he wanted to create them knights. He gave them first a very handsome house in the city of Dublin for themselves and attendants, where I was ordered to reside with them, and never to leave the house without an absolute necessity. I lived with them for three or four days without any way interfering, that we might become accustomed to each other, and I allowed them to act just as they pleased. I observed, that as they sat at table, they made grimaces, that did not seem to me graceful nor becoming, and I resolved in my own mind to make them drop that custom.

' When these kings were seated at table, and the first dish was served, they would make their minstrels and principal servants sit beside them, and eat from their plates and drink from their cups. They told me, this was a praiseworthy custom of their country, where every thing was in common but the bed. I permitted this to be done

done for three days; but on the fourth I ordered the tables to be laid out and covered properly, placing the four kings at an upper table, the minstrels at another below, and the servants lower still. They looked at each other, and refused to eat, saying I had deprived them of their old custom in which they had been brought up.

' I replied with a smile, to appease them, that their custom was not decent nor suitable to their rank, nor would it be honourable for them to continue it; for that now they should conform to the manners of the English; and to instruct them in these particulars was the motive of my residence with them, having been so ordered by the king of England and his council. When they heard this, they made no further opposition to whatever I proposed, from having placed themselves under the obedience of England, and continued good humouredly to persevere in it as long as I staid with them.

' They had another custom I knew to be common in the country, which was the not wearing breeches. I had, in consequence, plenty of breeches made of linen and cloth, which I gave to the kings and their attendants, and accustomed them to wear them. I took away many rude articles, as well in their dress as other things, and had great difficulty at the first to induce them to wear robes of silken cloth, trimmed with squirrel-skin or minever, for the kings only wrapped themselves up in an Irish cloak. In riding, they neither used saddles nor

ftrrups, and I had some trouble to make them conform in this respect to the English manners.

‘I once made inquiry concerning their faith; but they seemed so much displeased, I was forced to silence: they said, they believed in God and the Trinity, without any difference from our creed. I asked which pope they were inclined to: they replied, without hesitation, ‘To that at Rome.’

~~X~~ ‘I inquired if they would like to receive the order of knighthood? for the king would willingly create them such, after the usual modes of France, England, and other countries. They said they were knights already, which ought to satisfy them. I asked when they were made: they answered, at seven years old; that in Ireland a king makes his son a knight, and should the child have lost his father, then the nearest relation; and the young knight begins to learn to tilt with a light lance against a shield fixed to a post in a field, and the more lances he breaks the more honour he acquires. ‘By this method,’ added they, ‘are our young knights trained, more especially king’s sons.’

‘Although I asked this, I was before well acquainted with the manner of educating their children to arms. I made no further reply than by saying, this kind of childish knighthood would not satisfy the king of England, and that he would create them in another mode. They asked, ‘In what manner?’ ‘In church, with most solemn ceremonies;’ and I believe they paid attention to what I said.

‘About

' About two days after, the king was desirous to create these kings knights ; and the earl of Ormond, who understood and spoke Irish well, as his lands join the territories of the kings, was sent to wait on them, that they might have more confidence in the message from the king and council. On his arrival, they shewed him every respect, which he returned; as he knew well how to do, and they seemed happy at his coming. He began a most friendly conversation with them, and inquired if they were satisfied with my conduct and behaviour. They replied, ' Perfectly well : he has prudently and wisely taught us the manners and usages of his country, for which we ought to be obliged, and do thank him.'

' This answer was agreeable to the earl of Ormond, for it shewed sense ; and then, by degrees, he began to talk of the order of knighthood they were to receive, explaining to them every article and ceremony of it, and how great a value should be set on it, and how those who were created knights behaved. The whole of the earl's conversation was very pleasing to the four kings, whom, however, as I have not yet named, I will now do : first, Aneel the great, king of Mecte * ; secondly, Brun de Thomond, king of Thomond and of Aire † ; the third, Arthur Macquemaire, king of Leinster ; and the fourth Contruo, king of

* Aneel the great, king of Mecte. Q. O'Neale the great, king of Meath.

† Thomond and Aire. Q. Ulster.

Cheyeno and Erpe*. They were made knights by the hand of the king of England, on the feast of our Lady in March, which that year fell on a Thursday, in the cathedral of Dublin, that was founded by Saint John the Baptist. The four kings watched all the Wednesday-night in the cathedral; and on the morrow, after mass, they were created knights, with much solemnity. There were knighted at the same time sir Thomas Orphem*, sir Joathas Pado, and his cousin sir John Pado. The four kings were very richly dressed, suitable to their rank, and that day dined at the table of king Richard, where they were much stared at by the lords and those present: not indeed without reason; for they were strange figures, and differently countenanced to the English or other nations. We are naturally inclined to gaze at anything strange, and it was certainly, sir John, at that time, a great novelty to see four Irish kings.'

'Sir Henry, I readily believe you, and would have given a good deal if I could have been there. Last year I had made arrangements for coming to England, and should have done so, had I not heard of the death of queen Anne, which made me postpone my journey. But I wish to ask you one thing, which has much surprised me: I should like to know how these four Irish kings have so readily submitted to king Richard, when his valiant grandfather, who

* Conruo, king of Cheyeno and Erpe. Q. O'Connor, king of Connaught.

† Sir Thomas Orphem.—MSS. Ourghem and Gourghem.

was so much detested every where, could never reduce them to obedience, and was always at war with them. You have said it was brought about by a treaty and the grace of God : the grace of God is good, and of infinite value to those who can obtain it ; but we see few lords now-a-days augment their territories otherwise than by force. When I shall be returned to my native country of Hainault, and speak of these matters, I shall be strictly examined concerning them ; for our lord duke Albert of Bavaria, earl of Holland, Hainault and Zealand, and his son William of Hainault, style themselves lords of Friesland, an extensive country, over which they claim the government, as their predecessors have done before them ; but the Frieslanders refuse to acknowledge their right, and will not by any means submit themselves to their obedience.

To this Henry Castile answered : ' In truth, sir John, I cannot more fully explain how it was brought about ; but it is generally believed by most of our party, that the Irish were exceedingly frightened at the great force the king landed in Ireland, where it remained for nine months. Their coasts were so surrounded, that neither provision nor merchandise could be landed ; but the inland natives were indifferent to this, as they are unacquainted with commerce, nor do they wish to know any thing of it, but simply to live like wild beasts. Those who reside on the coast opposite to England are better informed, and accustomed to traffic. King Edward, of happy memory, had in his reign

so many wars to provide for, in France, Brittany, Gascony and Scotland, that his forces were dispersed in different quarters, and he was unable to send any great armament to Ireland. When the Irish found so large a force was now come against them, they considered it most advisable to submit themselves to the king of England.

Formerly, when Saint Edward, who had been canonised, and was worshipped with much solemnity by the English, was their king, he thrice defeated the Danes on sea and land. This Saint Edward, king of England, lord of Ireland and of Aquitaine*, the Irish loved and feared more than any other king of England before or since. It was for this reason, that when our king went thither last year, he laid aside the leopards and flower de lutes, and bore the arms of Saint Edward emblazoned on all his banners : these were a crois patencé or, on a field gules, with four doyes argent on the shield or banner, as you please. This we heard was very pleasing to the Irish, and inclined them more to submission, for in truth the ancestors of these four kings had done homage and service to Saint Edward : they also considered king Richard as a prudent and conscientious man, and have therefore paid their homage in the like manner as was done to Saint Edward.

* This must be a mistake ; for Aquitaine was brought to the crown of England by the marriage of Eleanora, the divorced queen of Louis le Jeune, king of France, with Henry II.

Thus

‘ Thus I have related to you how our king accomplished the object of his expedition to Ireland. Keep it in your memory, that when returned home you may insert it in your chronicle, with other histories that are connected with it.’ ‘ Henry,’ said I, ‘ you have well spoken, and it shall be done.’ Upon this, we separated; and, meeting soon after the herald March, I said,—‘ March, tell me what are the arms of Henry Castide; for I have found him very agreeable, and he has kindly related to me the history of the king’s expedition to Ireland, and of the four Irish kings, who, as he says, were under his governance upwards of fifteen days.’ March replied, ‘ He bears for arms a chevron gules on a field argent, with three bendants gules, two above the chevron and one below.’

All these things I retained in my memory, and put on paper, for I wished not to forget them.

CHAP. XXV.

THE DUKE OF LANCASTER IS ORDERED BACK FROM AQUITAINE.—KING RICHARD RECEIVES A FRIENDLY ANSWER TO THE PROPOSALS HIS AMBASSADORS HAD MADE TO THE KING OF FRANCE FOR A MARRIAGE BETWEEN HIM AND THE LADY ISABELLA, PRINCESS OF FRANCE.

I REMAINED in the household of the king of England as long as I pleased: but I was not always in the same place, for the king frequently changed his abode. He went to Eltham, Leeds-castle, Kingston, Shene, Chertsey and Windsor; none very far from London.

I was told for a truth, that the king and his council had written to the duke of Lancaster to return to England, for those from Aquitaine had boldly declared they would not submit to any other lord but the king of England. This had been determined on by so large a majority of the council that the duke of Gloucester, anxious as he was to keep his brother out of England, could not prevail that the gift the king had made him should be persevered in.

The whole council were fearful of the consequences: they were perfectly aware of what the deputies from Gascony had meant by their speeches; for they declared, that should the duchy

ditchy of Aquitaine be alienated from the crown of England, it would in times to come be very prejudicial to its interests. They were unwilling, therefore, to risk such a loss, as the towns of Bordeaux and Bayonne had always strongly supported the cause of England. This was not forgotten to be urged in the council during the absence of the duke of Gloucester; but when he was present none dared to declare their real sentiments. The affair, therefore, was not further pressed.

I will now say something of the earl of Rutland, the earl marshal and the other English ambassadors, that had been sent to France to treat of a marriage between king Richard and the young daughter of the king of France, who was not then more than eight years old, and tell how they prospered. These ambassadors continued their journey from Calais, through Amiens, Clermont in Beauvoisis, to Paris: wherever they passed, they were most honourably received, according to orders that had been given by the king of France and his council. They were lodged at Paris near the Croix du Tiroir, and their attendants and horses, to the amount of five hundred, in the adjacent streets. The king of France resided at the Louvre, the queen and her children at the hôtel de Saint Pol, the duke of Berry at the hôtel de Nèlé, the duke of Burgundy at the hôtel d'Artois: the duke of Bourbon, the duke of Orleans, the count de Saint Pol and the lord de Coucy were at their own hôtels; for the king had summoned the whole of his council, that he might be the better advised what

what answer to make to the English lords. He had ordered that two hundred crowns of France should be paid during their stay in Paris, for the expenses of them and their horses.

The principal lords, such as the earl of Rutland and the earl marshal, were frequently with the king, and staid dinner : the king, his brother and uncles, shewed them every attention, from respect to the king of England. The ambassadors demanded an answer to their proposals, but were some time put off with excuses ; for it was matter of great surprise to every one that the English should be so forward to offer such an alliance after the bitter war that had been carried on between the two nations, for such a length of time. Some in the council said,—‘ How will it be possible for the king, our lord, to give his daughter in marriage to his adversary the king of England ? We think, that before such a measure can take place, there ought to be a solid peace established between France, England, and their allies.’ This and many other points were agitated in the privy council of France.

There was at this period a very wise chancellor of France, called sir Arnaud de Corbie : he saw far into events likely to happen, and knew well the different interests that swayed the kingdom. He said to the king and his uncles,—‘ My lords, we ought to go straight forward in this business ; for king Richard of England shews plainly that he wishes nothing but affection to France, since he is desirous to ally himself with us by marriage. We have

have had two conferences for peace at Amiens and at Leulinghen, but neither were brought to any better conclusion than a prolongation of the truce. We know for certain, that the duke of Gloucester is in opposition to the king of England, and his two brothers of Lancaster and of York, in every thing relative to a peace with France. Neither the king of England nor any others who wish for peace can make him change his sentiments, but in the end he will not be able to withstand the king. Let us therefore make the most of this overture, and give the ambassadors such an answer that they may return satisfied.' The king of France and his uncles agreed with the chancellor, more especially the duke of Burgundy, who was so tired of war that he was anxious for peace on almost any terms. He was principally induced to this from his territories of Flanders, which he held in right of his duchess, being opposite to the shores of England; and the hearts of the Flemings were more inclined to the English than the French, from the commerce that was carried on between the two countries.

It was determined in the privy council, that the hearty welcome which had been made to the English should be continued: the king particularly willed it so: and it was advised (whether through dissimulation or not) that the ambassadors from England should receive kind answers, and have hopes given them before their departure that the king of England's proposal would be complied with.

The

The queen of France resided at the hôtel of St Pol on the banks of the Seine ; and, the better to please the English lords, their request was granted; to visit the queen and children; and especially the princess whom they were soliciting for their queen; as they were impatient to see her. This had been at first refused, for the council excused themselves; by saying that she was but a child ; and that, at her age of eight years, nothing could be judged of what she might turn out. She had, however, been well educated, as she shewed the English lords when they waited upon her ; for when the lord marshal had dropped on his knees, saying, ‘ Madam, if it please God, you shall be our lady and queen,’ she replied instantly, and without any one advising her, ‘ Sir, if it please God, and my lord and father, that I be queen of England, I shall be well pleased thereat ; for I have been told I shall then be a great lady.’ She made the earl marshal rise, and, taking him by the hand, led him to the queen, who was much pleased at her answer, as were all who heard it.

The appearance and manners of this young princess were very agreeable to the English ambassadors ; and they thought among themselves that she would be a lady of high honour and great worth. When they had staid at Paris more than twenty days, having all their expenses defrayed by the king of France, they received favourable answers to their demands from the king and council, with great hopes that the object of their mission would be accomplished, but not immediately ; for the prin-

princess was very young, and had likewise been betrothed to the son of the duke of Brittany. This obstacle they were told must be first got over, before any thing further could be done in the matter: it must therefore remain in this state the ensuing winter: during Lent the king of France would send information of what had been done to the king of England; and, when the days should be lengthened, the weather fine, and the sea calm, they might return, or any others whom the king of England should prefer to send, and they would be well received by the king and council of France.

This answer was satisfactory to the English ambassadors. They took leave of the queen, her daughter the lady Isabella, the brother and uncles of the king, and of all of whom it was necessary to take leave, and left Paris, following the same road they had come from Calais. The earl of Rutland and earl Marshal, who were the principals in this embassy, hastened, before any of their attendants, to carry the news of what they had done to the king of England. They landed at Sandwich, and in less than a day and a half arrived at Windsor, where the king then was. He was much rejoiced at their arrival, and with the answers they had brought back. He did not neglect this business; for his mind was so much occupied with it, that his whole thoughts were employed on the means of obtaining the daughter of France for his queen. If the king of England was thus busily

busily employed, the king and council of France were not less so, in turning their thoughts how they could make the most of this marriage to the honour and advantage of their country.

Many spoke of it, saying,—‘ If our advice were asked on the matter, and listened to, we would say, that the king of England should never have a princess of France until a firm peace were made between the two kingdoms and their allies. What good can be looked to from this connection to either country? for the moment the truces expire, and they have but three years to run, the war will recommence with as much inveteracy as before. These things ought to be well considered.’ The dukes of Berry and Orleans, with many of the great barons of France, were of this opinion, which was well known to the king, the duke of Burgundy, and to the chancellor, who were eager for any peace that should not be dishonourable to the crown of France.

CHAP. XXVI.

A SQUIRE OF NORMANDY, CALLED ROBERT THE HERMIT, HAVING DECLARED HE HAD SEEN A VISION, WHILE AT SEA, ORDERING HIM TO INTERFERE IN MAKING A PEACE BETWEEN FRANCE AND ENGLAND, IS SENT TO KING RICHARD AND HIS UNCLES TO THIS EFFECT.

AT this period, a valiant and prudent squire returned home to France: he had travelled much beyond sea, and his voyages and travels had gained him great renown, both at home and abroad, wherever they were known. This squire was from the country of Caux in Normandy, and his name was Robert Menuot*, but he was called Robert the Hermit. He was of a religious and holy life, of fair speech, and might be about fifty years old. He had attended the conferences at Leulinghen between the lords of France and England, where his discourses had been well listened to.

When Robert left Syria to return home, he embarked at Baruth, but had when at sea a furious tempest so that, for two days and a night, he and his companions were in such danger they thought they must be lost. Persons in such peril are gene-

* Robert Menuot. MSS. Mennot.

rally

rally very repentant and contrite, and have a greater fear of God. It happened, toward the end of the storm, when the weather and sea became somewhat calmer, that a figure as bright as chrystral appeared to Robert, and said; ‘ Robert, thou shalt escape from this peril, as well as thy companions for thy sake, for God has favourably heard thy prayers. He orders thee by me to return to France as speedily as thou canst, and instantly on thy arrival to wait on the king, and relate what has befallen thee. Thou wilt tell him to listen to peace with his adversary the king of England, for their wars have lasted too long. Do thou interfere boldly when conferences shall be holden to treat of peace between king Charles and king Richard, for thou shalt be heard; and all those who shall any way oppose or prevent peace from taking effect, shall dearly pay for their wickedness in their lifetime.’

Upon this, the voice ceased and the figure vanished, leaving Robert very pensive on what he had heard. He, however, believed that what he had seen came from Heaven: and from that moment they had wind and weather to their wishes, which brought them to Genoa.

Robert, on landing, took leave of his fellow-passengers, and made the best of his way to Avignon, where the first thing he did was to pay his devotions in the church of St. Peter. Finding there the grand penitentiary, he confessed himself duly and devoutly to him, relating the vision you have just read, and asked his advice how he should act

act on the occasion. The penitentiary strictly enjoined him not to mention the vision to any one before he had told it to the king of France, according to the orders given him, and that whatever the king should command he must do.

Robert followed this advice, and dressing himself in plain grey cloth, with very simple attendants, left Avignon, and continued his journey to Paris; where he heard that the king was at Abbeville to be near the conference at Amiens between the French and English. He immediately went to the abbey of St. Peter, where the king was lodged, at Abbeville; and was introduced to the presence by a Norman knight, his nearest relation, called sir William Martel, who was of the king's chamber. Robert minutely related every thing that had happened to him, which the king listened to with great attention; but, as the duke of Burgundy and sir Arnaud de Corbie, chancellor of France, the two most active commissioners for France, were absent at the conference, he said to Robert,—‘ Our council are at Leulinghen: you will remain here until they shall return, when I will talk with my uncle of Burgundy and the chancellor, and act according as they shall best advise me.’ ‘ God assist them! ’ answered Robert.

This same week the commissioners returned to Abbeville from the conference, bringing with them a project for peace. The English had inserted articles of such importance as a preliminary, that they had refused to admit them without knowing first the king's will on the subject, and on their

arrival they laid them before his majesty. The king took his uncle of Burgundy and the chancellor aside, to inform them of what Robert the hermit had told him, and to know if it ought to be believed and acted upon. They having looked at each other some time in silence, said they would examine this Robert themselves, and then would give him their opinion. Robert was sent for, and, being not far from where these secret councils were held, soon arrived. On his admission, he paid the king and the duke of Burgundy much respect; and the king said, ‘Repeat once more, very minutely, all that you told me.’ ‘Willingly, sire,’ replied Robert. He then detailed all you have before I heard of his adventures and vision, to which they attentively listened; and, when he had done, they desired him to leave the chamber, these three only remaining together. The king asked the duke of Burgundy what he thought of it: ‘My lord,’ said he, ‘the chancellor and myself will consider of it, and give you our answer to-morrow.’ ‘Very well,’ answered the king.

The duke and the chancellor consulted a long time by themselves on this matter, and on their mode of acting; for they saw the king believed the whole, and was desirous that Robert should be added to them as a commissioner, for he was so eloquent he converted the hearts of all who heard him. They at last resolved, that if Robert should publicly declare the orders he had received in his vision, it would be advisable for him to come to Leulinghen and explain it to the lords of England,

and

and all who wished to hear it; that it was lawful so to act; and this was the answer they made to the king on the ensuing day.

When the duke of Burgundy and the chancellor returned to the conference, they carried Robert the hermit with them, who was ready enough to speak what you have heard. On the lords of France and England being assembled, Robert came in the midst of them, and eloquently told the vision he had at sea, and maintained, by a long harangue, that what it said was by divine inspiration, and that God had sent it to him, because he willed it should be so. Some of the English lords, such as the duke of Lancaster, the earl of Salisbury, sir Thomas Percy, sir William Clanvow, the bishops of Saint David's and London, were inclined to credit what Robert related; but the duke of Gloucester and the earl of Arundel paid not any regard to it, and, when at their lodgings, in the absence of the French lords, said it was only a cheat, and a story made up to laugh at and deceive them. They unanimously resolved to write to king Richard every particular of what Robert the hermit had said and seen. This was done, and the letters given to a knight of the king's chamber, called sir Richard Credon, who found the king at a handsome place in Kent, called Leeds castle. He presented the king letters from his commissioners at Leulinghen, which gave him a full detail of every thing relative to Robert the hermit.

The king took much delight in perusing these letters at his leisure, and, and, when he came to

part that related to Robert the hermit, he said, he should be glad to see and hear this Robert; for he was inclined to believe that what he said had happened to him, might be true. He wrote back to the duke of Lancaster and the earl of Salisbury, to press them to exert themselves, that a firm peace should be established between him, the king of France and his allies; for, as Robert the hermit had said, the wars had lasted too long, and it was full time to hit upon some means to procure peace.

I have before related the whole of this matter; and that as nothing was concluded, in regard to a peace, a truce had been agreed on by the commissioners on each side, before they separated, between the two kingdoms and their allies, to last for four years, while, in the mean time, they would study to promote a lasting peace. Such were the intentions of the English commissioners, with the exception of the duke of Gloucester; for he was resolved, on his return to England, to oppose any peace with France; but he dissembled then his real sentiments, to please the king and his brother of Lancaster. Thus did I become acquainted with what passed relative to Robert the hermit.

Shortly after the return of the earl of Rutland, the earl marshal, the archbishop of Dublin, sir Hugh Despencer, sir Lewis Clifford, and those who had been attached to the embassy to France, bringing with them friendly answers relative to the marriage, the parliament assembled at Westminster. These parliaments last usually four days, when

when all business relative to the country is settled.

At the meeting of this parliament the duke of Lancaster returned from Bordeaux, whither he had been sent as duke of Aquitaine, for the inhabitants had refused to receive him in that quality. But I have mentioned these things before, and shall therefore say no more on the subject. The duke of Lancaster, on his return to England, was well received by the king and lords, as was right, and they discoursed on various business together.

As soon as it was known in France that the duke of Lancaster was in England, the king and his council resolved to send thither Robert the hermit, with credential letters to the king of England, who was desirous of seeing him; and that, when he should come back to France, the count de Saint Pol would go thither.

Robert the hermit would be well received by the king and lords of England, who would cheerfully attend to all he should relate of the affairs of Syria, Tartary, of Bajazet and Turkey, where he had resided a long time; for of such matters the English lords are very curious. Robert was ordered to make his preparations for going to England, which much pleased him, saying he would willingly go thither, as it was a country he had never seen.

Credential letters were given him from the king of France to king Richard and to his uncles. Robert left Paris with his array of only seven horses, (but all his expenses, as was just, were to be paid

N. 3. by

by the king of France,) and travelled to Boulogne, where he embarked and crossed to Dover. He went thence to Eltham, a palace of the king of England, seven miles from London, and met there the king, the duke of Lancaster, the earls of Salisbury and Huntingdon, and sir Thomas Percy, who shewed him much attention, in honour to the king of France, as did their sovereign, from his desire to see him. He gave his letters to the king and the other lords, who perused them with pleasure; but the duke of Gloucester was, I believe, at this time at a castle of his called Pleshy, in Essex. When Robert had remained at Eltham with the king and his court five days, he took his leave, and departed to visit the duke of Gloucester. With this intent he rode to London, and, on the next day, continued his journey, and lay at a town, fifteen miles from London, called Brebonde *, and on the morrow arrived at Pleshy, where he was handsomely received by the duke and duchess and their children.

Robert delivered his letters from the king of France to the duke, who, on finding they were credential letters, took Robert aside, and demanded the cause of his coming. Robert replied, that he would tell him at his leisure, for that he was not come to make a short visit. 'Well,' said the duke, 'you are very welcome.' Robert the hermit was well acquainted with the double character of the duke, and that he was violent against a peace

* Brebonde. Q. Brentwood. Burntwood.

with France, and in strong opposition to the king and his brother of Lancaster, who were well inclined to put an end to the war. He knew not well how to begin on this business, nor what means to urge to make him change his opinion; for he had witnessed his violence at Leulinghen, and knew that a war with France was uppermost in his thoughts. This, however, did not prevent Robert from talking to the duke of Gloucester respecting a peace; but he found the duke cold and reserved in his answers. He said, ‘that he had two elder brothers, of Lancaster and York, and that it was to them such affairs ought to be addressed, in preference to him; besides, supposing he was willing to agree to a peace, perhaps the rest of the nation would not consent.’

‘ My very dear lord,’ replied Robert, ‘ for the love of our LORD JESUS CHRIST do not oppose a peace: you can do a great deal towards forming one; and you know how much your king and nephew is inclined to it, who, besides, is anxious to strengthen the love between the two kingdoms, by a marriage with the daughter of the king of France.’

To this the duke answered,—‘ Robert, although you are at this moment in high favour, and well listened to by the kings and lords of both countries, the matter of peace is of so much consideration, that persons of greater weight than you must interfere in it. I repeat to you, what I have frequently said at different places and times, that I shall never be against a peace that is honourable to

my country. All that in a former peace was agreed upon with the king my father, and my brother the prince of Wales, and confirmed by the oath of king John, for himself and successors, under penalty of excommunication by the pope, has not been kept, and their oaths are of no value. The French have fraudulently broken the articles of this peace, and have even taken possession, by treachery and force, of those lands, castles and towns, that were given up at the peace to our late king and father, and to his successors. Besides, of the three millions of francs which were to be paid as the ransom of king John, six hundred thousand are yet unpaid.

' These matters, Robert, being so fresh in our memory, trouble us greatly, and make us cautious; and we wonder (I speak not only of myself but of others who have a right to interfere in the government) how our king should be so thoughtless that he does not compare passed times with the present; and how he can think of uniting himself with his enemies, and thereby disinheriting the crown of England of all future advantage.'

' Dear lord,' replied Robert, ' our LORD JESUS CHRIST suffered on the cross for us sinners; but he forgave, at his death, those who had crucified him. It is necessary, therefore, that we in like manner forgive our enemies, if we expect to be admitted to the glories of paradise. All hatred, malice and ill will were put an end to, and mutually

ally pardoned, the day the peace was signed by your ancestor at Calais.

‘ War was afterwards renewed with bitterness between the two countries, through faults and deceptions on each side; for, when the prince of Wales returned from Castille to Aquitaine, a set of people, called Companions, the greater part of whom were English, or Gascons dependant on the king of England or the prince, collected together and entered France, without the smallest title of reason, and carried thither a more disastrous war than the preceding one. They called the kingdom of France their manor, and were so determined on mischief there was no resisting them: for this reason, when the realm was so oppressed, and the evils daily multiplying, king Charles, son to king John, was advised by his vassals to provide a remedy, and oppose such conduct by open war or otherwise.

‘ Many great barons of Gascony at this time allied themselves with the king of France, whom the prince of Wales, who ought to have been their lord, wanted to oppress and bring more under his power, as they said and wanted to prove by various facts, but which they would not longer suffer. They made war on the prince, in conformity to their appeal to the king of France, who, by the advice of his council, joined them in order to get rid of these free companies that ravaged France. Many lords, towns and castles turned to the king of France from the oppressions they laboured

boured under from the prince, or those employed by him.

‘ Thus was the war renewed with more inveteracy than before, to the destruction of the people and country, as well as the weakening the faith of God. This last is so sensibly felt in Christendom that the enemies of our faith, much emboldened, have already conquered great part of Greece, and the empire of Constantinople, through fault of not resisting a Turk called Basant, surnamed Amorabaquin*. He has conquered the whole kingdom of Armenia, with the exception of the single town of Cource, situated on the sea-shore, like Southampton or Bristol in this country.

‘ The Genoese and Venetians hold this against the Turks; but they cannot long withstand the power of Bajazet, emperor of Constantinople, who is of your blood, for he is the son of Hugh de Lusignan, by the lady Mary de Bourbon, cousin-german to the queen your mother. But should there be peace (as there will, if it please God) between France and England, all knights and squires desirous of glory, and of exalting their names, will hasten thither, and assist the king of Armenia to drive out the Turks from his kingdom. The war has continued too long between France and England, and all those who may any

* This Amorabaquin, so much disfigured, was the sultan Bajazet, who ascended the throne 1391. He was surnamed, like his father, l'Amurath Bacquin, according to the MSS. in the British Museum.

way oppose or delay the blessings of peace will severely be punished in this life for so doing.'

'How do you know that?' said the duke of Gloucester.

'Dear lord,' answered Robert, 'all I say comes from divine inspiration, and was given me in a vision as I was returning by sea from Baruth in Syria towards the island of Rhodes.' He then related fully all he had seen and heard in this vision, the more effectually to move the heart of the duke of Gloucester to listen to terms of peace. But the heart of the duke was hardened against peace, and he always returned to his former opinions, holding in contempt, by his words, the French in all things, notwithstanding what Robert had said to him: however, as he was a foreigner, and seemed eager to do good, and knowing beside that the king of England wanted to conclude a peace, he dissembled his real sentiments as much as he could, and turned the conversation to other subjects.

Robert the hermit staid two days and as many nights at Pleshy with the duke and duchess of Gloucester and their children, who, in outward appearance, made him very welcome. On the third day, he took leave of them, and departed for London; and went thence to Windsor, where the king then resided. He was handsomely entertained at Windsor, as well in honour to the king of France, who had sent him, as on account of his eloquence and good manners. It may be supposed that the king of England inquired of him

him secretly how he had succeeded with his uncle of Gloucester, and Robert told him truly all that had passed.

The king knew well that the duke of Gloucester would never willingly agree to a peace with France, from his preference to war : he therefore paid much greater court, and shewed more affection to his other uncles of Lancaster and York, and to other prelates and barons of England, who he thought would serve him.

Robert the hermit, having been a month or more in England, began to make preparations for his departure. When he took leave of the king and lords, the king made him very rich presents, out of love to the king of France, as did the dukes of Lancaster and York, the earls of Huntingdon and Salisbury, and sir Thomas Percy. The king had him escorted as far as Dover, where he embarked, and landed at Calais : he then journeyed on to Paris, where he found the king and queen of France, and his uncles, to whom he faithfully related the detail of his journey, and the good cheer the king of England had made him.

Messengers were almost daily passing from one king to the other, with the most friendly letters from each. The king of England was very impatient to succeed in his marriage with the daughter of the king of France, who, on his side, had an affection for it, as he did not see how he could more nobly marry her.

CHAP. XXVII.

THE LORD DE LA RIVIERE AND SIR JOHN LE MERCIER ARE DELIVERED OUT OF PRISON.

THE lord de la Riviere and sir John le Mercier, after having been carried from prison to prison, and to different castles, were at last given up to the provost of the Châtelet, and in daily expectation of being put to death, through the hatred of the dukes of Berry and Burgundy, and their advisers. They had been in this melancholy state for more than two years, without the king being able to assist them: He, however, would not consent to their execution; and the dukes of Berry and Burgundy perceived that the duke of Orleans strongly befriended them.

The duchess of Berry was incessant in her entreaties with her lord in their favour, more particularly for the lord de la Riviere; but they could not condemn one without the other, for they were both implicated in the same accusation. The solicitations of many worthy persons, added to the justice of their cause, were of much weight: and several of the great barons of France thought they had now sufficiently suffered, and should be set at liberty; for that sir John le Mercier had wept so continually, when in prison, his sight was weakened so that he could scarcely see, and it was currently reported he was quite blind.

At

At length, there was an end put to their sufferings; for the king, although he had consented to their imprisonment, for reasons which had been given him, granted them his pardon, deferring further inquiry into what had been laid to their charge until a future opportunity, and when he should be more fully informed. All his lands and castles were restored to the lord de la Riviere, and, in the first instance, the beautiful castle of Auneau, near Chartres, on the borders of Beauce; but he was ordered thither, and never to recross the river Seine, unless recalled by the king's own mouth.

Sir John le Mercier returned to his fine house of Noviant, of which he bore the title as lord, in the Laonnois; and he had similar orders not to repair the rivers Seine, Marne and Oise, unless specially commanded by the king. They also bound themselves to go to whatever prison they might hereafter be ordered by the king or by his commissioners. The two lords thankfully accepted this grace, and were rejoiced to be delivered from the Châtelet. On gaining their liberty, they thought they should be allowed to see the king, and thank him for his mercy, but it was not so: they were forced to quit Paris instantly, and set out for their different estates. They, however, obtained their liberty, to the great joy of all who were attached to them.

CHAP. XXVIII.

THE DUKE OF BRITTANY AND SIR OLIVER DE CLISSON ARE RECONCILED.—THE DOWAGER QUEEN OF SICILY INSTITUTES A LAW-SUIT IN THE COURTS OF PARIS AGAINST SIR PETER DE CRAON.

YOU have often heard of the feuds between the duke of Brittany and sir Olivér de Clifson; and that, whenever the two parties met, a deadly engagement ensued, without either side shewing mercy. In this warfare, however, sir Oliver had the advantage, for two-thirds of the country were in his favour. The barons of Brittany dissembled between both; and the citizens of the chief towns told the duke, that this war no way concerned them, and that they would not interfere in it, for that commerce was more essential to them than a war with the lord de Clifson.

Sir Oliver held them excused in regard to him, as they would be mediators in a peace, which the viscount de Rohan, the lord de Léon and the lord de Dignan, were pressing on the duke of Brittany, who had declared to these three lords, that if he could obtain a meeting with the lord de Clifson, he would comply with such terms as they should think honourable to propose.

These three barons went to the castle where sir Oliver resided, and told him how far they had succeeded

49

succeeded with the duke, who would at any time grant him and his company passports for coming and going; and that they imagined, if once they could meet, all their quarrels would be put an end to.

The lord de Clisson replied,—‘ You are all my friends and relations, and I put my whole confidence in you: I verily believe what you say from the duke that he would willingly have me in his presence; but, as God and my lord St. Yves may help me, I will never on such words or promise quit my castle. Tell him, since he has deputed you here, to send me his eldest son, who shall remain as my pledge; and, when he shall be arrived, I will wait on him when and where he pleases. As my end shall be, so will be that of his son; if I return, he shall return; but, if I be detained, so shall he. Such are my conditions.’

The three barons, seeing they could gain no other answer, were satisfied with it, and, taking their leave in a friendly manner, departed for Vannes, where the duke was waiting for them, and related to him the proposal from sir Oliver de Clisson. The duke could not obtain other terms; and the lord de Clisson had greatly the advantage in this war: the duke conquered nothing from him, while sir Oliver won several places from the duke, besides having twice captured all his gold and silver plate, with many precious jewels, all of which he turned to his own profit.

The

The end, however, of this quarrel was as follows: The duke of Brittany, as great a prince as he was, saw plainly he could no way bend the lord de Clisson to his will, for he had too many friends in Brittany. With the exception of the great barons in the duchy, all the knights, squires and inhabitants of the principal towns, inclined to the lord de Clisson. The barons dissembled their sentiments, and told the duke, they would not interfere in the matter unless it should be to mediate a peace, if any means could be found out for so doing. The duke of Orleans, in particular, supported sir Oliver underhand in various ways, and he was well pleased whenever he received news of the good success of his enterprises.

The duke of Brittany, who was of a subtle imagination, and had laboured hard with many difficulties in his time, weighed all these circumstances; and also that he was not beloved by his subjects, who would shew it, if they dared, without infringing their homage, as well as the children of sir Charles de Blois slain at the battle of Auray; namely John of Brittany, count de Penthièvre and Limoges, married to the daughter of the lord de Clisson; sir Henry of Brittany * his brother, and

* Denys Sauvage says in a marginal note, that he never heard of this personage before, and supposes that at that period the count de Penthièvre had not any brother.

In Anderson's Royal Genealogies, the lord Charles de Blois had issue Guido count de Penthièvre, died S. P.—John, married to Margaret de Clisson,—N. N. married to Charles of Spain, constable of France, murdered by the king of Navarre,—Mary, wife of Lewis duke of Anjou, son of John king of France.

their sister the queen of Naples and Jerusalem. He felt likewise that he was growing old, that his children were young, and, except the duke and duchess of Burgundy, he had not a friend in France who would take care of them, in case of his decease; for, by the mother's side, they came from the branch of Navarre, which was not a family well beloved in France from the remembrance of the many wicked acts, in former times, of king Charles of Navarre, the duchess of Brittany's father. He was therefore afraid, should he die during the subsisting hatred of sir Oliver de Clisson and the count de Penthièvre, his children would have too many enemies. He perceived also that the English, who had certainly raised him to the honours he now possessed, were becoming indifferent to his welfare, and would probably increase in coolness, if the information he had received of the approaching connection between the kings of France and England were true. He had learnt that the treaty of marriage was far advanced between the king of England and the daughter of the king of France, who had been promised to his eldest son.

All these things alarmed the duke, but especially what has been last mentioned troubled him more than all the rest. Having fully considered them, he resolved to throw aside all dissembling, and openly and honestly make peace with sir Oliver de Clisson and John of Brittany; leaving them to say what amends, if any, he should make for the damages done them during the war, and for what had

had happened in former times, reserving to himself the duchy of Brittany, which was to descend after him to his children, according to the treaty that had been signed, with the approbation of all parties, by the children of sir Charles de Blois.

This treaty he was not desirous to have broken: on the contrary, he would that every article should be observed, and that it should again be sworn to and loyally maintained in its whole extent. Should John of Blois, count de Penthièvre, not be satisfied with his inheritance in Brittany, he would fairly leave it to the viscount de Rohan, the lords de Dignan, de Laval, de Léon, de Beaumont, and sir John de Harpedane, to settle the matter between them.

The duke of Brittany, having maturely arranged this in his own mind, without asking advice from any one of his council, called a secretary, to whom, on entering his chamber, he gave a large sheet of paper, and said, ‘ Write down as I shall dictate.’ The secretary being ready, the duke repeated to him every word he was to write. The letter was indited in the most friendly terms to sir Oliver de Clisson, desiring him to devise some means for them to have an interview, when every thing should be settled in the most agreeable manner.

When the letter was folded up, in the presence only of the duke and his secretary, he sealed it with his signet, and, calling his most trusty varlet into the chamber, said,—‘ Hasten to castle Josselin,

and say boldly that I have sent thee to speak with my cousin sir Oliver de Clisson. Thou wilt be introduced to him: salute him from me: if he return the salute, give him this letter, and bring me back his answer; but on thy life tell no man, woman or child whither thou art going, nor who has sent thee.'

The varlet, having promised obedience, set out, and on his arrival at château-Josselin, the guard was greatly surprised when they heard that the duke of Brittany had sent him to speak with their lord. Nevertheless, they informed sir Oliver of his coming, who ordered him into his presence: on his entrance, he delivered his message and the letter. The lord de Clisson examined the private signet of the duke, which he knew well, opened the letter, and read it two or three times over, and was much astonished, during the perusal, at the affectionate and friendly terms it was written in. After musing some time, he told the varlet he would consider his answer, and ordered him to be conducted to an apartment by himself.

The attendants of the lord de Clisson were confounded at what they saw and heard; for never before had any one come from the duke of Brittany who had not been instantly put to death, or confined in the deepest dungeon. When sir Oliver had retired to his chamber, his thoughts were occupied with the contents of the letter, and his hatred to the duke was extinguished, from the submissive and affectionate manner in which he had written

written to him : he said to himself that he would prove him, and see if he were really in earnest ; for he could not venture to go to him merely on the faith of this letter, and, if any accident happened to him, he would be pitied by none.

He determined, therefore, that if the duke would send his son as an hostage, he would come to him when and where he pleased, but not otherwise. He wrote a very friendly answer, and the conclusion was, that if he wished to see him, he must send his son as his pledge, who would be taken the greatest care of until his return. This letter was sealed and given to the varlet, who hastened back to the duke at Vannes, where he was impatiently expecting him. On receiving the letter from sir Oliver, he instantly read it : having paused a moment, he said, ‘ I will do it ; for, since I mean to treat amicably with him, every cause of distrust must be removed.’ He wrote to the viscount de Rohan, who resided at his castle of Caire, in the neighbourhood of Vannes, to come to him. The viscount, on the receipt of the duke’s letter, waited on him, and he then explained his intentions, by saying, ‘ Viscount, you and the lord de Monboucher shall carry my son to château Josselin, and bring back with you the lord de Clisson, for I am determined to make up our quarrel.’ The viscount replied, that with joy he would obey him.

It was not many days after, that the viscount de Rohan, the lord de Monboucher and

sir Yves de Tegre, carried the boy, who might be about seven years old, to château Josselin, where they were handsomely and honourably received by sir Oliver de Clisson. When he saw the boy, and this proof of confidence from the duke, he was much affected. The three knights also said, ‘ You see, sir, how well inclined the duke is to you : he now bears you nothing but the sincerest affection.’ ‘ I am at present convinced of it,’ replied sir Oliver ; ‘ and, since he makes such advances, I will not be behind hand, but put myself under his obedience. I know not if to you, who are so nearly related to him, and in whom he has such trust as to confide his son and heir, to bring and leave here as an hostage until my return, he has told the contents of the letter he sent me under his private signet.’

‘ Sir,’ answered the knights, ‘ he has assured us of the earnest and sincere desire he has to make peace with you ; and you may believe us, for we are your relations.’ ‘ I firmly do believe you,’ said sir Oliver, as he went out to fetch the duke’s letter. Having read it to them, they replied, ‘ He certainly has spoken to us in the very same terms in which he has written to you, and in consequence has sent us hither.’

‘ So much the better,’ answered sir Oliver.

It was not long after the arrival of the three knights, with the heir of Brittany, before the lord de Clisson had made his preparations. They all

all set out together from château Josselin, carrying the boy with them; for sir Oliver said he would give him back to his father, as henceforward he should never distrust the duke, after the trial he had made of him. Such generosity was shewn on both sides, that it was no wonder a firm peace was the consequence.

They continued their journey to Vannes, where, according to the duke's orders, sir Oliver dismounted at a convent of the Dominicans, which is situated without the town, where the duke had fixed the meeting to take place. When he heard that the lord de Clisson had brought back his son, he was highly delighted with his generosity and courtesy. The duke set out from his castle of la Motte, for the convent, where he and sir Oliver shut themselves up in a chamber: having conversed some time, they went privately into the garden, and thence to the banks of a river, and entered a small boat that conveyed them to a large vessel that lay at anchor at the mouth of the river, which they boarded, and, when at a distance from their people, continued for a long time in conference.

I cannot pretend to say what passed between them, but I will relate the consequences. Their friends thought they were all the time in the convent, when they were on ship-board, arranging all things on the footing they wished them to remain. They were upwards of two hours together, if not longer, according to what I heard,

and made a firm peace, which they mutually swore to observe most religiously.

When they were about to return, they called their boatman, who rowed them back to the place he had brought them from, and they entered the church by a private door, through the garden and cloisters of the convent, whence they soon departed for the castle of la Motte, the duke holding sir Oliver by the hand. All who thus saw them were pleased: indeed, the whole of Brittany was very happy when the news of this reconciliation was made public; but greatly were they surprised on hearing how it had been brought about.

John of Blois, count de Penthievre, was no loser by this peace; on the contrary, his revenue was augmented twenty thousand golden crowns of France, well and legally assigned to him and his heirs. To confirm and strengthen this peace, a marriage was concluded between the son of John of Blois and a daughter of the duke of Brittany; so that those who looked for a continuance of war were disappointed. When intelligence of these transactions reached France and England, it caused very great surprise*.

You

* When the duke of Brittany and the lord de Clisson were reconciled, they named commissioners to put their agreement into a legal form; and, according to the historian of Brittany often quoted, these lawyers met at Aucer, near Redon, the 19th October 1395. The principal articles of the treaty were, that the duke should assign over to the count de Penthievre the lordships of Châteauneuf du Fafo, Vhelgouet, Gourien, Douault, Châ-

You have before had it related how sir Peter de Craon incurred the indignation of the king of France and the duke of Touraine, for his attempt to murder the constable of France, sir Oliver de Clisson, as he was returning to his hôtel in the night-time from the king's palace, and that, from the duke of Brittany having supported and given him an asylum, the king of France had declared war against him, which he would have carried into effect had he not been suddenly taken ill between Mans and Angers, when on his march to Brittany : but this melancholy event caused the expedition to be put an end to, the army to be disbanded, and every man to return to his own home.

You have also heard how the dukes of Berry and Burgundy took up this business, and shewed great hatred to those who had advised the king to this expedition against Brittany, such as the lord de

Châteaulin in Cornouaille, Laanion and Châteaulin sur Trieuc, for the yearly payment of eight thousand livres ; that the duke might take back these lands when he pleased, on giving others of like value in Brittany or France ; that the count should pay obedience to the duke, notwithstanding the demolition of the castle of Tonguedoc, the restoration of which he could never insist on ; that the lord de Clisson would acknowledge the duke for his lord, but to have liberty, during four years, to appear personally or by proxy ; that all lands that had been seized by each side during the war should be restored to their respective owners.

This treaty was sealed and sworn to by the lord de Clisson, at Rieux, the 20th October. The count de Penthièvre swore to it five days after at Guingamp, in the presence of the viscounts de Fou and Henri de Juck, chamberlains to the duke.

Clisson,

Clisson, the lord de la Riviere, sir John le Mercier, Montagu, and others, whom they made suffer severely for it; for these two dukes had the sovereign government of the kingdom during the illness of the king. You have likewise heard of the inveterate war that was carried on between the duke of Brittany and sir Oliver de Clisson, and of their reconciliation; as well as of the deliverance of the lord de la Riviere, sir John le Mercier, and Montagu, from their confinements. Montagu had not so many difficulties to encounter as the other two; for, the instant the king recovered his health, he would have Montagu near his person, and assisted to make his excuses for several charges that had been laid against him. You must know, however, that this disorder of the king, and many of the like kind that followed, (for he had several relapses, to the great sorrow and alarm of France,) greatly weakened his power; and his will was so little attended to that the three above-named persons, or two of them at least, very narrowly escaped death.

Sir Peter de Craon hearing of the miserable state of the king and kingdom of France, far from being sorry, was much rejoiced, and made the strongest entreaties that he might be restored to the king's favour, and allowed to return to the court of France. His negotiators were the duke of Burgundy and sir Guy de la Trimouillé, who would too easily have succeeded had not the duke of Orleans strenuously opposed it. He prevented any treaty being made in favour of sir Peter de

Craon

Craon as long as the war continued between the duke of Brittany and the lord de Clisson; but, when they were reconciled, his hatred against sir Peter was much softened.

At this period, the queen of Naples and Jerusalem, widow of the late duke of Anjou, was prosecuting sir Peter de Craon in the courts of justice at Paris, for the restitution of one hundred thousand francs, a sum she claimed as due to her late lord; and for that reason, and to attend the more to her affairs, she resided privately in Paris. Sir Peter found himself very disagreeably situated: he was fearful of the decision of the parliament, for the lady was of great personal weight, and had proved from whom, during the life of the duke of Anjou, he had received this sum, and for which, as she maintained, he had never accounted. He was ill at ease on this account, and besides knew he had incurred the disgrace of the king and the duke of Orleans. The duke and duchess of Burgundy comforted him as well as they could; and he was allowed to come to Paris, privately, where he remained, during the greater part of his residence, at the hôtel d'Artois, under the protection of the duchess of Burgundy.

CHAP. XXIX.

THE KING OF HUNGARY WRITES TO THE KING OF FRANCE HIS SITUATION IN RESPECT TO THE SULTAN BAJAZET.—JOHN OF BURGUNDY, ELDEST SON TO THE DUKE OF BURGUNDY, MARCHES, AS COMMANDER IN CHIEF, AN ARMY TO THE SUCCOUR OF THE HUNGARIANS.

ABOUT this time, Sigismond king of Hungary wrote very affectionate letters to the king of France, which he sent by a bishop and two of his knights. The contents of these letters, related to the threats of Bajazet, and his boastings to the king of Hungary, of carrying the war into the midst of his realm, and thence to Rome, where his horse should eat his oats on the altar of Saint Peter. He said he would establish that place for the seat of his imperial government, and be attended by the emperor of Constantinople and all the principal barons of Greece: each of whom should follow their own laws, for that he would only reserve to himself his authority as their lord paramount. The king of Hungary entreated the king of France to listen to his distress; and make it public throughout France and other countries, that all knights and squires might be moved to provide themselves with every necessary for a journey to Hungary, to oppose the sultan Bajazet, and prevent holy Christendom from being oppressed.

pressed or violated by him, and that his vain boastings might be annihilated.

Many affectionate expressions were contained in these letters, such as kings and cousins are accustomed to write to each other in cases of necessity. Those who brought them were men of rank and understanding, and acquitted themselves so well, that king Charles was much inclined to their request; and the propositions from king Richard for the marriage of his daughter prospered the more, and were sooner agreed to, than if this intelligence from Hungary had not arrived in France; for, as king of France and eldest son of the church, he was very desirous of providing a remedy for the evils that threatened it.

The subject of these letters was soon made public, both at home and abroad, to move the hearts of gentlemen, knights and squires, who were desirous to travel in search of glory.

At the time this news came to Paris, there were with the king the duke and duchess of Burgundy, their eldest son, John of Burgundy count de Nevers, who was not then a knight, sir Guy and sir William de la Trimouille, sir John de Vienne, admiral of France, with other great barons. It was proposed, therefore, at the hôtel of the duke of Burgundy, who was eager to send assistance to Hungary, that his son, the count de Nevers, should undertake an expedition thither, as commander in chief of the French and other chivalry.

John of Burgundy was a courteous and amiable youth

youth of twenty-two years old, greatly beloved by the knights and squires of Burgundy, and indeed by all who were acquainted with him. He had married a prudent and devout lady, the daughter of duke Albert of Bavaria, count of Hainault, Holland and Zealand, who had brought him two children, whom, in due season, he looked to ally nobly. It was hinted to him, to know what he would say, that perhaps the king of France might select him, to lead a body of men at arms to the assistance of the king of Hungary. He replied, ‘that if it were agreeable to his lord the king, and his lord and father, he would cheerfully accept of this command, which came very opportunely, as he had a great desire to gain renown.’ ‘Sir,’ answered those to whom he had addressed himself, ‘speak first to your father, and learn whether he be willing that you go, and if he will talk to the king on the subject; for without their consent nothing could be done.’

It was not long after this, that John of Burgundy spoke to the duke his father, requesting humbly his consent to go on the expedition to Hungary, as he had a strong wish for it. When he made this request, there were with the duke sir Guy and sir William de la Trimouille, sir James de Vergy, and other knights, who, taking part in the conversation, said,—‘My lord, what John of Burgundy asks is very reasonable, for it is time he should receive the order of knighthood; and he cannot more honourably receive it, than when marching against the enemies of God and of

our

our faith. In case the king intend to send assistance to Hungary, whom can he so properly appoint as leader than his cousin-german, your son? and you will see that many knights will join his company to advance their name.'

The duke replied,—' You speak to the purpose, and we have no inclination to check the ardour of our son; but we must first talk to the king, and hear what he shall say.' The subject then dropped; but it was not long before the duke mentioned it to the king, who instantly complied, saying, he would do well to go thither; and, if he was in earnest, he not only gave his consent, but would appoint him commander in chief of the expedition.

It was published in Paris and elsewhere; that John of Burgundy was to lead a large body of men at arms into Hungary, to oppose the force of Bajazet; that, when this was done, he was to advance to Constantinople, cross the Hellespont, enter Syria, gain the Holy Land, and deliver Jerusalem and the holy sepulchre from the hands of the infidels, and the bondage of the sultan. Knights and squires began now to collect together, with other gentlemen who were desirous of renown. The duke of Burgundy, on the appointment of his son to the chief command, paid greater attention than before to the Hungarian Ambassadors, who, perceiving the good will of the king of France and the nation, were well pleased; and took leave of the king, the dukes of Orleans, Berry, Burgundy, the lord Philip d'Artois, count d'Eu

d'Eu and constable of France, the count de la Marche and the other barons, on their departure for their own country, where the king of Hungary was greatly delighted with the news they brought. In consequence of this, he gave orders for large stores of provision to be provided against the arrival of the French; and sent messengers to his brother, the king of Germany, and his cousin, the duke of Austria, for all the passes in their territories to be thrown open, as it would be necessary for them to march that way: he likewise ordered plenty of provision to be ready prepared, on the road they were to come. He sent also information of the expected assistance from France to the great master of the Teutonic order, and to the knights of Rhodes, that they might be ready to meet John of Burgundy, who, in the course of this summer, would lead a thousand knights and squires, all men of valour, into Hungary, on their way to Turkey, to oppose the menaces of the sultan Bajazet.

While the news of this expedition was the matter of conversation every where, the lord de Coucy returned from the frontiers of Genoa, where he had been upwards of a year negotiating with the Genoese. Some of the leading men in that city had informed the duke of Orleans that persons composing the government of Genoa were desirous of having for their duke one of the blood-royal of France, and, as he had married the daughter of the duke of Milan, it would be very suitable for him.

In consequence of this, the lord de Coucy had passed through Savoy and Piedmont, with the consent of the count de Savoye and the Savoyards, accompanied by three hundred lances and five hundred cross-bows. Having obtained leave from the duke of Milan, he continued his journey from Asti in Piedmont to a town called Alexandria, and thence to the frontiers of Genoa, to enter into negotiations with the Genoese, and learn more plainly their intentions. By force he could do nothing unless he were very superior to the Genoese, which was not the case.

When the lord de Coucy had entered the territories of Genoa, which are not easy to conquer, if the inhabitants have any disposition to defend them, some of those lords who had sent the information to the duke of Orleans, and had been the cause of his coming, waited on him, and with many friendly expressions welcomed him to their country and offered him their castles. But the lord de Coucy was as prudent as valiant, and being well acquainted with the character of the Lombards and Genoese, was unwilling to trust too much to their offers and promises. However, he received them kindly, and treated them fairly by words; for although there were many conferences between them, they were held in the open fields, and not in any house or castle; but the more he negotiated the less he gained.

The Genoese shewed him every token of affection, and invited him repeatedly to come to Genoa, or to Porto Venere, but the lord de Coucy

would never put himself in their power. The issue of his negotiation was unsuccessful; and when it was found he could not do any thing, having regularly written to the duke of Orleans respecting the state of affairs, he was remanded to Paris, at the time when the expedition to Hungary was in agitation.

The duke and duchess of Burgundy were happy at his return, and, sending for him to the hôtel d'Artois, addressed him in the most amicable manner as follows :

'Lord de Coucy, we have the highest opinion of your understanding, valour and prudence; and as we have made John our son and heir undertake the command of an expedition, which we hope will turn out to the honour of God and Christendom, knowing that you of all the knights of France are the best informed of warlike affairs, we beg and entreat most earnestly that you would be the counsellor and companion of our son in this expedition; for which we shall be so greatly obliged, that we will return it by serving you or yours to the utmost of our power.'

The lord de Coucy replied,—'My lord, and you Madam, what you request is to me an order. I will surely be of this expedition, if it please God, for two reasons: first, from devotion, and to defend the faith of Jesus CHRIST; secondly, from the honour you do me, by giving me the charge of advising my lord John your son. I shall therefore obey, and acquit myself in all respects to the best of my abilities. But, my

my dear lord, and you my very dear lady, you may readily excuse me from this weight, and lay it on the lord Philip d'Artois, constable of France, and on the count de la Marche ; for they are nearly related to him, and intend to form a part of the expedition.'

The duke answered, — ' Lord de Coucy, you have seen much more than either of them, and know more of war than our cousins of Eu and de la Marche ; and we entreat you to comply with our request.'

' My lord,' said the lord de Coucy, ' your words are commands ; and I will do as you require, since it is your pleasure, with the aid of sir Guy de la Trimouille, his brother sir William, and sir John de Vienne admiral of France.'

The duke and duchess were well pleased with this answer.

The lords of France made vast preparations for their expedition to Hungary, and solicited the company and service of different barons, knights and squires. Such as were not asked, and had a wish to go thither, made application to the count d'Eu, constable of France, the count de la Marche or the lord de Coucy, that they would take them in their company. Some were accepted : but those who were not, considering the great distance Hungary and Turkey were from France, greatly cooled in their ardour ; for, as they were not retained, they were not sufficiently wealthy to perform the journey with credit to themselves.

Nothing was spared in the preparations for the young John of Burgundy with regard to horses, armour, emblazonments, dresses, silver and gold plate, and the duke's officers were fully employed in the business. Large sums of florins were given to the servants of John of Burgundy, who paid them to the different workmen as they finished and brought home their works. The barons, knights and squires, to do him honour, exerted themselves to make their equipments as handsome as possible.

The lord Philip d'Artois, count d'Eu, made magnificent preparations ; for he was determined to march thither as constable of France ; and the king, who much loved him, assisted him with money, and he acted in the same manner with respect to the lord Boucicaut marshal of France. The duke of Burgundy, considering that this expedition would cost him very large sums, and that the state of his wife, himself and his son Anthony, ought not to be any way diminished, bethought himself of a tax he had in reserve, in order to find a supply of money for these expenses. He had received from cities and towns in Burgundy, as the usual tax on his eldest son receiving the order of knighthood, six score thousand golden crowns : but his additional tax was laid on all knights who held fiefs from him, to attend his son into Hungary, or compound in money. Some were taxed at one thousand livres, others at two thousand ; some at five hundred ; each according to his wealth,

wealth, or the value of the lands. Ladies and ancient knights, who were unfit or disabled to undertake such an expedition, paid compositions at the duke's pleasure. The young knights and squires were exempted paying, for they were told,—‘ My lord does not want your money : you must accompany the lord John at your own costs and charges.’ Of this last tax, the duke of Burgundy received from the gentlemen of his duchy sixty thousand crowns, for none were exempted.

CHAP. XXX,

THE COUNT D'OSTREVANT, BROTHER-IN-LAW
TO JOHN OF BURGUNDY, BEING DESIROUS TO
MARCH TO HUNGARY, IS ADVISED BY HIS
FATHER TO ATTEMPT, IN PREFERENCE, THE
RE-CONQUEST OF FRIESLAND, WHICH BELONG-
ED TO THEM.

NEWS of this expedition to Hungary was spread far and near. On its being announced in Hainault, knights and squires, eager for renown, assembled together, and said,—‘ It would not be amiss if our lord of Hainault, who is young and promising, were to accompany his brother-in-law, the count de Nevers, in this expedition ; and, should it take place, we must not fail to attend him.’

The count d'Ostrevant resided in Quesnoy at the time such conversations were held, and was informed what his knights and squires said. This made him the more willing to accompany his brother-in-law, having before had such intentions. Whenever the subject was mentioned in his presence, he dissembled his real thoughts, by saying little about it, meaning to consult his lord and father, duke Albert of Bavaria, count of Hainault, how he would advise him to act.

It was not many days before he set out to visit the duke and duchess of Bavaria at the Hague, where they lived. He addressed his father,—‘ My lord, it is currently reported that my brother-in-law of Nevers has undertaken an expedition to Hungary, and thence to Turkey, against the sultan Bajazes. There must be grand deeds of arms performed; and at this moment I am perfectly idle, knowing not whether to bear arms: I wish to learn your intentions, if it would be agreeable to you that I should accompany my brother-in-law on this honourable expedition, with one hundred of our chivalry. My lord and lady of Burgundy will thank me for so doing; and there are many knights and squires in Hainault who will eagerly go with me.’

Duke Albert replied, like one who had well weighed the subject,—‘ William, since thou hast so great a desire to travel, and to seek for deeds of arms in Hungary and Turkey, against a people and country who have never done us any wrong, it must be caused by vainglory alone, for thou hast

not

not a shadow of reason to induce thee to go thither. Let John of Burgundy and our cousin of France perform their enterprise, and do thou undertake one that more nearly touches us. March to Friesland, and conquer back that country, which was our inheritance; for the Frieslanders have, by rebellion, withdrawn themselves from our obedience; and, if thou undertake this, I will assist thee.' This speech from his father was very agreeable to the count d'Ostrevant, and raised his spirit: he answered, ' My lord, you say well, and, if it be your opinion I should undertake such an expedition, I will do so heartily.' By little and little, the matter was so long talked over between the father and son, that the invasion of Friesland was agreed upon; and a circumstance I shall relate greatly helped him in this matter.

The count d'Ostrevant had at that time, for his principal adviser, a squire of Hainault, called Fierabras, or the bastard of Vertain. He was equal in prudence as in arms, so that when the count told him what his father had said, he replied,—' Sir, my lord your father gives you excellent advice. It will be more for your honour to undertake this expedition than to join that to Hungary; and, when you begin your preparations for it, you will find plenty of knights and squires in Hainault and elsewhere, ready to accompany and assist you. But if you really are in earnest to undertake it, I would recommend that you first go to England, to make known your intentions to the knights and squires of that country; and to

entreat the king of England, your cousin, that he would permit you to retain knights, squires and archers, and allow them to accept of your pay, and to accompany you from England. The English are men of valour : if you succeed in obtaining their assistance, you will go far to be successful ; and if you can prevail on your cousin, the earl of Derby, to take part and come with you, there will be still greater chances of success, and your enterprise will gain more renown.'

The count d'Ostrevant inclined to the council of Fierabras de Vertain, for he thought it good ; and, when he spoke of it to the lord de Gomegines, he likewise agreed to it, as did all who were friends to the count. News of this was whispered throughout Hainault, and a proclamation soon after issued, to prohibit all knights and squires from quitting the country, to form part of any expedition to Hungary or elsewhere, for that the count d'Ostrevant needed their services, and would, this summer, lead them against Friesland.

We will, for a while, leave this matter, and speak of others that were in greater forwardness.

CHAP. XXXI.

JOHN OF BURGUNDY, COUNT OF NEVERS, LEADS AN ARMY INTO HUNGARY AGAINST THE TURKS.—THE NEGOTIATIONS FOR THE MARRIAGE OF KING RICHARD OF ENGLAND WITH THE ELDEST PRINCESS OF FRANCE ARE CONTINUED.

THE knights and squires in different countries were all alive at the wars that seemed likely to take place in opposite quarters: some made themselves ready for the expedition to Hungary others for that to Friesland: and whenever they met they conversed on these subjects.

The count de Nevers was prepared; and all those knights had been enrolled who were to be under his charges, and to accompany him. The purveyances were very considerable and well arranged; and, as the honour of the expedition was given to him, he made handsome presents to his knights and squires, and gave them many stores; for, as the journey was long and expensive, it was but proper the men at arms should be aided to support them. In like manner did other lords act; such as the constable of France, the count de la Marche, the lords Philip and Henry de Bar, the lord de Coucy, sir Guy de la Trimouille, sir John de Vienne admiral of France, Boucicaut marshal of France, sir Reginald de Roye, the lords

lords de Saint Pol, de Montorel, de Saint Py, the haze de Flandres, sir Louis de Brézé, his brother, and the borgne de Monquel, with many more ; for they amounted to one thousand knights and as many squires, all men of tried courage and enterprize.

- They left their homes about the middle of March, and advanced in good array by companies. They found all the roads open to them, for the king of Germany had commanded that his country and Bohemia should afford them every friendly assistance to supply their wants, and that the prices of provision should on no account be raised.

Thus did these lords of France march to the assistance of the king of Hungary, whose army was to have a pitched battle against that of Bajazet, on the 20th day of the ensuing month of May. They passed Lorraine, the counties of Bar and Montbelliard, the duchy of Burgundy, and, entering Aussais, traversed that whole country, and, having crossed the Rhine in many places, marched through the county of Ferrette, and entered Austria.— This is an extensive and wild country, with difficult passes ; but they advanced with so good an inclination, that they did not suffer from the labour and fatigue. The chief conversation of the French lords was concerning the power of the Turks, which they seemed to make very light of.

The duke of Austria gave the French lords a handsome reception ; but he was particularly attentive

tentive to John of Burgundy, for the lord Otho, eldest son to the duke, had espoused Mary of Burgundy, his sister. All these French lords were to assemble at a city called Buda, in Hungary. Let us return to the affairs of France.

You have before heard that the king of England had sent as ambassadors to the king of France, to conclude a marriage between him and his eldest daughter Isabella, the archbishop of Dublin, the bishop of St. David's, the earl marshal, the earl of Rutland, son to the duke of York, sir Henry Clifford, the lord Beaumont, the lord Despencer, sir John de Robersat, and several more. They had succeeded well in the business, and the French king made them welcome, as did his uncles and council. The ambassadors returned to England in high spirits, and gave the king great hopes that his wishes would be gratified.

King Richard was not idle in the business, but, during the following winter, frequently reminded the king and council of France of it, who were far from being adverse, for they considered it as one of the surest means to put an end to the wars which had lasted so long between France and England. The treaty was carried on with eagerness and friendship on both sides; and the king of England promised, from the power he had over his subjects, that there should be peace between the two countries. To conclude the business, the earl of Rutland and the earl marshal, with the other ambassadors, were again sent to Paris. They were lodged at the Croix du Tiroir, and, with their

their attendants, occupied the whole of that street, and part of another : they were full six hundred, and remained in Paris upwards of three weeks, supplied with every thing from the king of France.

CHAP. XXXII.

THE QUEEN OF NAPLES, WIDOW TO THE LATE DUKE OF ANJOU, OBTAINS JUDGMENT IN PARLIAMENT AGAINST SIR PETER DE CRAON.

DURING the time these ambassadors were at Paris negotiating the marriage of the king of England, the dowager queen of Naples was also there, busily employed in her own concerns, for she was a lady of great activity. Her business at that time was before the parliament, where she was pleading two causes : one for the inheritance of the county of Roussy against the count de Brianne ; for the late duke of Anjou, her lord, had bought and paid for it to a lady who was countess de Roussy, some time wife to sir Louis de Namur, from whom she was divorced.

The other was against sir Peter de Craon, from whom she claimed the sum of one hundred thousand francs, and which she proved he had received for and in the name of her late lord the king of Naples,

Naples, Sicily and Jerusalem, on condition to pay the same to him in la Puglia; but, when he was informed of the king of Naples' death, he no longer continued his journey but returned to France, making use of the above-mentioned sum to his own profit, without rendering any account of it to the queen of Naples, nor to her two children Lewis and Charles, but dissipating it in folly and extravagance. This was the cause, as the queen of Naples said, of the loss of that kingdom, which was regained by Margaret Durazzo and the heirs of sir Charles Durazzo; for the soldiers of her late lord, who were aiding her to continue the war in Calabria and la Puglia, deserted her for want of pay: many had turned to the count de St. Severino and to Margaret Durazzo, and others had retired from the war.

All these matters were pleaded in the courts of the parliament at Paris for upwards of three years: although sir Peter de Craon was absent, his advocates defended him well. They said, that in regard to the sum of one hundred thousand francs which he was charged with having received in the name of the king of Naples, that king was indebted to him as much, if not more, for the great and noble services he had rendered him.

Notwithstanding the length of time this cause lasted, it was impossible to put off for ever its conclusion; and the lady was very urgent that judgment should be given by the parliament.

The judges, having considered the matter well, declared they would give no judgment until both parties

parties were personally before them. This was then difficult to accomplish, from the disgrace sir Peter de Craon was in with the king and the duke of Orleans, for his attempt to assassinate the constable. The lady, finding nothing would be done until sir Peter was before the court, perfectly free from every other charge except what she accused him of, and with full liberty to go any where in France, exerted herself greatly to obtain this for him, that an end might be put to her suit. Her solicitations with the king, the duke of Orleans, the count de Penthièvre, sir John Harpedane and others, who had any complaints against him, were successful, and he was acquitted of all other charges: I know not whether it happened through disimulation or otherwise, but he was shewn great attention and kindness by the nobles and ladies of France until the time when judgment was to be given. He kept up as great state at Paris as ever he had done, and was appointed to receive the English ambassadors, and to introduce them to the king, his brother and uncles, for he was a knight perfectly well versed in all such ceremonies.

The day was fixed for the parliament to decide on the queen of Naples' complaints: the sentence had before been determined upon, and waited solely for the appearance of all parties concerned. A great number of the nobility attended; that it might have more authenticity; among whom were the queen of Sicily and Jerusalem, duchess of Anjou and countess of Provence, her son Charles, prince

prince of Tarantum, and John of Blois, ~~and~~
commonly called John of Bretany, count de Poitiers,
thievre and Limoges, the dukes of Orleans, Berry,
Burgundy and Bourbon, the count de Brianne and
the bishop of Laon, whom the queen had brought
before the court on the subject of her claim on
the county of Rouffy. Sir Peter de Craon was
likewise there, attended by many of his relations
and friends.

The matter of the county of Rouffy was first
disposed of; and the judgment of the court was
solemly pronounced, that the county should
belong to the count de Brianne and to his heirs,
who was to have immediate possession given him;
but the queen of Naples was to be repaid in
money the full amount of what her late lord, the
duke of Anjou, had given to the countess of
Rouffy, lately deceased. The heirs of the coun-
teess of Rouffy, to whom the lands belonged,
thanked the court for the judgment they had
given.

The president, who was to declare the sentence
in the second cause, now rose, and said, 'the par-
liament had determined that sir Peter de Craon
was indebted to the queen of Naples in the sum of
one hundred thousand francs, which he must pay
to her, or be committed to prison until it was done
completely to her satisfaction.' The queen thanked
the court for their judgment, and, instantly, on
her request, sir Peter de Craon was arrested, in
the king's name, and carried to the prison of the
couver, where he was confined and well guarded.

Upon

Upon this, the parliament broke up, and every one returned to his home. Thus were these two sentences given, through the activity of the duchess of Anjou.

CHAP. XXXIII.

THE MARRIAGE IS CONCLUDED BETWEEN KING RICHARD OF ENGLAND AND THE LADY ISABELLA, ELDEST DAUGHTER TO CHARLES VI. KING OF FRANCE.—THE DUKE OF LANCASTER MARRIES AGAIN.—SIR PETER DE CRAON IS, AFTER SOME TIME, DELIVERED FROM PRISON, AT THE ENTREATY OF THE YOUNG QUEEN OF ENGLAND.

THE earl marshal, the earl of Rutland, and the English ambassadors remained for twenty-two days in Paris, where they were excellently well entertained by the king and his court: their negotiations were successful, and the marriage between the king of England and the princess Isabella was agreed on. She was betrothed and espoused by the earl marshal, as proxy for the king of England, and the lady, ever after, was styled queen of England. I was at the time told it was pleasant to see that, young as she was, she knew well how to act the queen.

When this business was completed, and the dif-
ferens

ferent treaties signed and sealed, the ambassadours took their leave of the king and his court, and departed from Paris to Calais, on their return to England, where they were joyfully received by the king, the duke of Lancaster, and the lords attached to the king's person and pleasures.

• However much others might be pleased, it was not so with the duke of Gloucester; for he saw plainly that by this marriage peace would be established between the two kingdoms, which sorely displeased him, unless it should be such a peace as would redound to the honour of England, and every thing were placed on the same footing as when the war broke out in Gascony. He frequently conversed on this subject with his brother the duke of York, and, whenever the occasion was favourable, endeavoured to draw him over to his way of thinking, for he was but of weak understanding. He dared not speak so freely to his elder brother of Lancaster, who was of the king's party, and well satisfied with this marriage, on account of his two daughters the queens of Castile and Portugal.

At this period, the duke of Lancaster married his third wife, the daughter of a Hainault knight, called sir Paon de Ruet: he had formerly been one of the knights to the good and noble queen Philippa of England, who much loved the Hainaulters, as she was herself of that country.

This lady whom the duke of Lancaster married was called Catherine, and in her youth had been of the household of the duchess Blanche of Lancaster.

After the lady Blanche's death, and the duke married the daughter of don Pedro, he still cohabited with the lady Catherine de Ruct, who was theret married to an English knight now dead*.

The duke of Lancaster had three children † by her, previous to his marriage, two sons and a daughter: the eldest son was named John lord Beaufort of Lancaster; the other Thomas, whom the duke kept at the schools in Oxford, and made a great churchman and civilian. He was afterward bishop of Lincoln, which is the richest bishoprick in the kingdom: from affection to these children, the duke married their mother, to the great astoishment of France and England, for Catherine Swineford was of base extraction in comparison to his two former duchesses Blanche and Constance.

When this marriage was announced to the ladies of high rank in England, such as the duchess of Gloucester, the countess of Derby, the countess of Arundel, and others connected with the royal family, they were greatly shocked, and thought the duke much to blame. They said, 'he had sadly disgraced himself by thus marrying his concubine,' and added, that 'since it was so, she would be the

* Sir Hugh Swineford.

† Froissart mistakes in the number, and Thomas for Henry. According to Sandford, he had four children by Catherine Swineford:—John Beaufort, earl of Somerset,—Henry Beaufort, bishop of Winchester and cardinal of Beaufort,—Thomas Beaufort, duke of Exeter and earl of Dorset,—Joan Beaufort, countess of Westmoreland.

For further particulars, see Sandford and Dugdale.

second lady in the kingdom, and the queen would be dishonourably accompanied by her; but that, for their parts, they would leave her to do the honours alone, for they would never enter any place where she was. They themselves would be disgraced if they suffered such a base-born duchess, who had been the duke's concubine a long time before and during his marriages, to take precedence, and their hearts would burst with grief were it to happen.'

Those who were the most outrageous on the subject were the duke and duchess of Gloucester. They considered the duke of Lancaster as a doating fool for thus marrying his concubine, and declared they would never honour his lady by calling her sister. The duke of York made light of the matter, for he lived chiefly with the king and his brother of Lancaster. The duke of Gloucester was of a different way of thinking: although the youngest of the three brothers, he yielded to no man's opinion, was naturally very proud and overbearing, and in opposition to the king's ministers, unless he could turn them as he willed.

Catherine Ruet, however, remained duchess of Lancaster, and the second lady in England, as long as she lived. She was a lady accustomed to honours, for she had been brought up at court during her youth, and the duke fondly loved the children he had by her, as he shewed during his life and at his death.

I must mention, that when the sentence of the court of parliament at Paris had been pronounced

against sir Peter de Craon in favour of the queen of Naples, he was confounded. Finding that he must refund the one hundred thousand francs or remain his whole life in prison, he listened to the counsel that was given him from the duke and duchess of Burgundy. They advised him to solicit the young queen of England to intercede with the queen of Naples to obtain his liberty for fifteen days only, that he might seek out his friends in Paris to pay this money, or to become his sureties until he had procured it in Brittany or elsewhere, engaging to return with the sum he was condemned to pay.

The queen of Naples complied with the request of the queen of England, but on condition that sir Peter de Craon should every night sleep in his prison at the Louvre. Sir Peter sought for aid among his relatives in vain; for the sum was too great for them to advance, and they refused being his sureties. At the end of the fifteen days, he was forced to return to his prison, where he was strictly guarded day and night, and at his own proper costs.

We will now speak of what actions and enterprises the count de Nevers and the lords of France performed this summer in Hungary; and then say something of the expedition the earl of Hainault and earl of Ostrevant made into Friesland.

CHAP. XXXIV.

**JOHN OF BURGUNDY, COUNT OF NEVERS, PASSES
THE DANUBE WITH HIS ARMY.—AFTER THE
CAPTURE OF SEVERAL PLACES, THE TOWN OF
NICOPOLI IS BESIEGED*.**

ON the arrival of the count de Nevers with his army, which was composed of numbers of valiant men from France and other countries, at Buda in Hungary, the king gave them a most hearty reception, as indeed he ought, for to serve him were they come. It was the intention of the king of Hungary, before he took the field, to obtain some certain intelligence of the movements of Bajazet; for he had given him notice since last February to increase his forces, as he would in the course of the month of May lead an immense army to cross the Danube and offer combat to the Hungarians.

Many wondered how this could be done; but others replied,—‘ nothing was impossible to man; that as Bajazet was of great valour and enterprise, and had said he would do so, he would surely accomplish it; but, if he failed in his threat, and did

* Nicopoli,—on the Danube, in Bulgaria, sixty leagues N. W, from Adrianople. It is famous for the battle, in 1393, between Sigismond king of Hungary and Bajazet. Sigismond lost the battle and twenty thousand men; but it cost Bajazet fifty thousand, who were left dead on the field.

not cross the Danube, we ought to cross it, and enter his kingdom of Turkey. The king of Hungary could lead thither one hundred thousand men, including foreigners, which was sufficient to conquer all Turkey, and even to advance to the kingdom of Persia. If we gain a victory over Bajazet, we shall so far succeed, that we may conquer Syria and the Holy Land, and deliver Jerusalem out of the hands of the Sultan and the enemies of our God. In the ensuing summer, the kings of France and England will jointly raise a large force of men at arms and archers ; and, when they shall be united to us, nothing will be able to withstand so powerful an army.'

Such were the conversations of the French in Hungary. When the month of May arrived, being disappointed in their expectations of hearing of the march of Bajazet, the king of Hungary sent scouts across the Danube to seek intelligence, and, at the same time, issued his summons for his power to assemble. The knights of Rhodes came thither in numbers during the month of May, looking for the arrival of the Saracens, but no news was heard of them. The king of Hungary, on this, sent some Hungarians, who were used to arms, and well acquainted with the country, beyond the Danube, but they were as unsuccessful as his former scouts, in not meeting Bajazet : they heard that he was still in Asia, at Damascus, Antioch or Alexandria.

The king, on receiving this information, called a council of his lords, and those who were come from

from France, who were eager to signalize themselves, to consider how they should act in this emergency. The king told them that he had sent some expert men at arms to seek Bajazet, who had advanced far into Turkey ; and that there was no appearance Bajazet would this summer put the menace into execution, of crossing the Danube to offer him battle. The king wished to have advice on this matter, more especially from the French lords.

The lord de Coucy having consulted with the other barons, answered for them, that if Bajazet should have told lies, and deceived them by not keeping his word, they ought not for that to remain idle, but attempt some deeds of arms, since they were come thither to that effect ; that all the French, Germans and other foreigners, were willing to meet the Turks ; and if under the command of Bajazet so much the better, as it would redound more to their honour. What the lord de Coucy said was approved of by the French, Germans, Bohemians and others, as the most advantageous manner of employing the season.

Orders were, in consequence, issued by the king and marshals, that every one be prepared by a certain day, which was appointed on the octave of Saint John the Baptist, to march for Turkey. These orders were punctually obeyed ; and you would have seen servants busily employed in preparing all things for their masters' wants.

The lords of France were desirous of making a handsome figure, and examined well their armour

and equipages, sparing no money to have them as complete as possible. Their appearance was grandly magnificent, when they took the field from Buda, the principal city of Hungary. The constable of Hungary had the command of the van division, because he knew the country well, and led with him a large body of Hungarians and Germans. Next to him marched the French lords, the constable of France, the count de la Marche, the lord de Coucy, the lords Henry and Philip de Bar, and many more.

With the king of Hungary rode the greatest barons of his realm, as was proper, and by his side John of Burgundy, who often conversed with him. They were full sixty thousand horse: the infantry were few in number, indeed none but the followers of the army. The array of the Christians was noble and handsome; and among the Hungarians were many cross-bow men on horseback. This army advanced until it came to the banks of the Danube, which it crossed in barges, boats and pontoons, prepared some time since for this purpose. It was more than eight days before all had passed over; and as they landed on the opposite shore, they lodged themselves to wait for their companions.

The Danube divides the kingdoms of Hungary and Turkey. When the whole army had crossed, they were delighted to find themselves on Turkish ground, for they were impatient to try the courage of the Turks. After a council, they resolved to besiege a town in Turkey called Comecet^{*}, and

* Comecet. Q. Nissa.

made preparations to invest it on all sides. This could easily be done; for it is situated in an open plain, with a river deep enough to bear vessels, called the Meete*, which rises in Turkey, and falls into the Danube near the sea. This river Danube is very wide, and has more than four hundred leagues of course from its spring to the sea: it would be the most profitable of rivers to Hungary and the adjoining countries, if the vessels it carries could have a free passage to the sea, but that is impossible; for, right at its mouth, there is a mountain which divides it into two parts, and chokes the passage; the noise of the water is so tremendous, no vessel dares approach it, and it may be heard seven leagues off.

On both sides of the river Meete are fertile meads, to the great advantage of the inhabitants, and vineyards, which in favourable seasons produce good wines. The Turks vintage them, and, when made, they are put into goat skins, and sold to the Christians, for, according to their religion, they are forbidden to taste wine under pain of death; at least when discovered so doing, they are punished: they make pleasant beverages of many other excellent fruits and spices, and are accustomed to drink much of goat's milk, during the hot weather, to refresh and cool them.

The king of Hungary encamped his army before this town without opposition, for no one made any attempt to prevent the siege; nor was there

* Meete. Q. Morava.

any person or army in the place, from Bajazet, to guard or defend it. On their arrival, they found the fruits ripe, which was a great comfort to them. Many attacks were made on the town, but they were valiantly opposed by the inhabitants, in the expectation of daily receiving reinforcements from Bajazet, their lord, to raise the siege. None however came, and the city was taken by storm, with great slaughter of men, women and children, for the Christians on entering it spared none.

When Comecte had thus been destroyed, the king of Hungary decamped with his army, and advanced farther into Turkey towards the large city of Nicopoli; but, before he arrived there, he came to a town called Laquaire, where he encamped fifteen days, for it was so long before he could conquer it. This was also taken by storm, and destroyed. They then marched to another town and castle called Brechappe, governed by a Turkish knight, the lord of the place, who had with him a strong garrison.

The king of Hungary encamped his Hungarians about a league distant from it on account of water, for there was none nearer Brechappe; but the counts de Nevers, d'Eu, de la Marche, and the lords de Coucy, Boucicaut, de Saimpi, de Roye, Henry and Philip de Bar, with more than a thousand French knights and squires, made their approaches close to the town. The count de Nevers had been created a knight by the king of Hungary, on his entering Turkey; and, the day he displayed his banner, upwards of three hundred were

were knighted. Those who had advanced to the town won it, within four days, by assault; but the castle was too strong, and resisted all their attacks. The lord of Brechappe, whose name was, I believe, Corbadas, a very valiant man, saved many of his people within the castle. He had three brothers, called Maladius, Balachius and Russin.

After the capture of the town, the Christians were seven days before the castle, and attacked it many times, but they lost more than they gained.

These four brothers shewed they were men of valour by the defence they made. The French lords having well considered the strength of the castle, and that they lost more than they won, saw plainly their attempts would be vain, and decamped, for they had heard the king of Hungary was desirous to lay siege to Nicopoli. Thus was the siege of Brechappe-castle broken up, and the garrison left in peace, but the town was burnt. The count de Nevers and the lords of France joined the king of Hungary, who instantly prepared to march to Nicopoli.

Corbadas de Brechappe was well pleased to observe the Christians marching away, and said,—
 ‘ We shall now be undisturbed for some time: if my town be burnt, it will be rebuilt and recover itself: but I am surprised that we have no news from our sultan Bajazet; for he told me, the last time I spoke with him in the city of Nicopoli, that he would return to this country the beginning of May.

May. His intentions were to cross the Hellespont, and march to Hungary to offer battle to the Christians, as he had sent to inform the king of Hungary. But this he has not done; and the Hungarians, greatly strengthened and emboldened by succours from France, have crossed the Danube and entered Turkey, where they will destroy all the possessions of Bajazet, for we have no force to oppose them. They will now for certain besiege Nicopoli, which, although sufficiently strong to hold out for some time, must be well defended. We are four brothers, knights, and relations to Bajazet: we ought, therefore, to attend to his concerns; and, in consequence, I propose the following plan: I and my brother Maladius will go to Nicopoli to assist in its defence; Balachius shall remain here to guard Brehappe, and Ruffin shall cross the sea and hasten to find Bajazet, and inform him of every thing that has happened, and the great army that has invaded Turkey, that he may take instant measures to prevent the dis-honourable loss of his possessions, and march such a force against the Christians as may conquer them: otherwise he will not only lose Armenia that he has won, but his own territories also; for, according to appearances, the king of Hungary and the Christians are determined to attempt his complete destruction.'

The three Turks approved of what their brother had said, and promised obedience. They made preparations accordingly; and, in the meantime, the siege was laid before Nicopoli by the Christians.

Christian army, amounting to nearly one hundred thousand men. Corbadas de Brechappe and his brother Meladius gained admittance into the town, to the joy of the inhabitants.

Balachius remained in the castle of Brechappe, and Ruffin took the first opportunity of setting out, passing the Christian army in the night, for he was well acquainted with the country, and crossed the Hellespont to learn intelligence where Bajazet was.

In truth, Bajazet was at Cairo with the sultan of Babylon, to solicit his aid, and there the Turk found him. When Bajazet saw him, he was much surprised, and imagined something extraordinary had happened. He called to him, and asked how things were going on in Turkey.

'My lord,' replied he, 'they are very anxious to see you there, for the king of Hungary, with an immense force, has crossed the Danube, and invaded the country. They have committed great destruction, and burnt five or six of your inclosed towns : when I left Brechappe, they were marching to Nicopoli. My brothers Corbadas and Mala-dius have thrown themselves, with some men at arms, into the town to assist in the defence. You must know, that in this army of the king of Hungary, there is a body of Frenchmen the most gallant and best appointed that can be seen. It behoves you, therefore to summon your friends and vassals, and hasten to Turkey with an army powerful enough to drive these Christians across the

the Danube; but, if your force is not very considerable, you will not be able to accomplish it.'

'How many are they?' asked Bajazet. 'Upwards of one hundred thousand,' said the Turk; 'and all on horseback, armed in the best possible manner.' Bajazet made no reply to this, but entered the chamber of the sultan of Babylon, leaving the Turk, who had brought this intelligence, among his people. He related what you have just heard to the sultan of Babylon, who answered,—' You must provide yourself accordingly, and shall have men enough to oppose them; for we must, by all means, defend our religion and possessions.' 'That is true,' replied Bajazet; 'and my wishes are now accomplished; for I was desirous that the king of Hungary would cross the Danube with his army and enter Turkey. At present, I shall let him have full scope, but in the end he shall repay me fully for what he has done. It is four months since I heard of this expedition, from my good friend the duke of Milan, who at the same time sent me twelve hawks and gersfalcons, the finest I ever saw. With these presents, he wrote me the names and surnames of the barons of France who were coming to carry the war into Turkey, adding, that if I could capture those named in his letter, their ransoms would be worth to me more than a million of florins. Besides the barons he mentioned, there ought to be with them from France, or the neighbouring countries, five hundred gallant squires. The duke of Milan advised me, if we had a battle, (which

will

will infallibly be the case, for I shall march to meet them) to draw up my men with prudence, and to take every advantage in the combat; for they were all men of such ability and resolution, that the meanest would not fly, to avoid death. They have undertaken this expedition, as the duke writes me, solely through valour, to do some deeds of arms that may gain them renown. For this I feel myself thankful to them; and their desire for arms shall be gratified within three months from this time, when, perhaps, they may have more than sufficient.'

CHAP. XXXV.

A DIGRESSION FROM THE PRINCIPAL HISTORY TO EXPLAIN WHY JOHN GALEAS OF MILAN WAS MOVED TO GIVE THE TURK INFORMATION OF THE EXPEDITION INTENDED AGAINST HIM.

WHAT Bajazet had told the sultan of Babylon respecting the information he had received from the lord of Milan must surprise every one. It was supposed he had been baptised and was regenerated in our faith, and yet he had sought the friendship and alliance of an infidel king, an enemy to our religion, and had every year sent him presents of hounds and hawks, or the finest linen cloth that

that could be procured at Rheims, Cambray, or in Holland, which is very agreeable to the Saracens, who have none but what comes from our country. Bajazet, in return, made him rich gifts of cloth of gold and precious stones, of which they have abundance; and we cannot obtain them without great risk, unless by means of the Venetians or Genoese, who traffic with those parts.

With regard to the count de Vertus, duke of Milan, and the lord Galeas, his father, who reigned over the Milanese as tyrants, it is marvellous to think of their fortunes, and how they first gained possession of that country.

There were three brothers of the house of Visconti, sir Matthew, sir Galeas and sir Bernabo. These three brothers had an uncle who was archbishop of Milan during the time the lord Charles de Luxembourg, king of Bohemia and Germany, was elected emperor in the room of Lewis of Bavaria, who had obtained that dignity by force. He was never acknowledged emperor by the church, but, on the contrary, was excommunicated by pope Innocent VI. who then reigned. The cause of his excommunication was, that after being crowned at Rome, by a pope and twelve cardinals of his creation, he gave liberty to his German soldiers to plunder Rome, to make them amends for the pay that was due. This was the recompence the Romans received for the reception they gave him; and for this cause he died under sentence of excommunication. The pope and cardinals whom he had made came of their free will

to Avignon, and submitted themselves to pope Innocent, who absolved them of their error.

To return to the lords of Milan: I will say how they first obtained possession of the Milanese. This archbishop, their uncle, received in Milan the new emperor, on his return from Aix la Chapelle (where he had performed the usual ceremonies for forty days) with so much magnificence and splendour that, in return for this good cheer and for a loan of one hundred thousand ducats, the emperor created him viscount of Milan, and gave to him the territory of the Milanese, and to his nephews after him, to hold during pleasure, and until the hundred thousand ducats were repaid in one sum. When the archbishop died, his nephew, sir Matthew, was acknowledged by the emperor as viscount of Milan. His two brothers, sir Galeas and sir Bernabo, who then were far from rich, took counsel together, and determined to seize the government and rule over Lombardy: to accomplish this, they resolved on their brother's death, by poison or otherwise, and then to unite themselves so strongly by marriage that no one would dare to anger them.

After the death of sir Matthew, they reigned with great power, and were on the best terms during their lives. They divided the country of Lombardy between them: sir Galeas had ten towns, being the eldest brother, and sir Bernabo nine; and Milan was governed alternately by them for one year. To maintain their government, and supply their expenses, they laid heavy

taxes and gabelles on the people, and, by various means, extorted great wealth from their subjects. They had their towns garrisoned with foreign mercenaries, Germans, French, Bretons, English, and from every nation except Lombardy, for in the Lombards they had no confidence. These soldiers were regularly paid every month, and were much dreaded by the people, for none dared to oppose them. When any of the neighbouring lords ventured to resist their encroachments, they took a severe revenge, and destroyed several, that others might take warning.

The inhabitants of their towns were under such awe, that they possessed nothing but through the good pleasure of sir Galeas and sir Bernabo, and those who were rich they taxed three or four times a year. They said the Lombards were too proud of their riches, and good for nothing unless kept under subjection. They were indeed so by them, for none dared murmur or say a word against any of their commands. The two brothers married nobly, but they bought their wives from the wealth of their people. Sir Galeas espoused Blanche, sister to the good count of Savoy: before he had his consent, he gave him one hundred thousand ducats. Sir Bernabo married in Germany a sister to the duke of Brunswick, and did not pay a less sum than his brother had done*. They had many

* Galeas Visconti married Blanche of Savoy 10th September 1350.

Bernabo Visconti married Beatrix Scaligera, through pride called Regina, 27th September 1350.

Children, whom they married to powerful families, to add to their strength. Sir Galeas had a son called John Galeas, and when he heard that king John of France had obtained his liberty from England, and that he was in great difficulty to procure the first payment of his ransom, of three millions of francs, he negotiated with the king and his council to have one of the daughters of France for wife to his son John Galeas. His proposals were listened to, because they knew he was rich, and the king was distressed for money. He bought, therefore, the daughter of king John for six hundred thousand francs, which being paid to the king of England, his son married her. She brought him as her dower the county of Vertus in Champagne. They had a son and daughter, and the last was married, by dint of money, to the second son of the late king Charles V. called Lewis, who is at this moment duke of Orleans, count of Blois and of Valois. This marriage cost the count de Vertus, father of the lady, one million of francs, with part of which was bought the county of Blois, as you have heard related in this history.

The two brothers lived in great friendship with each other, which increased their power; and neither pope nor cardinal, who made war against them, could gain any advantage, nor any prince, except the marquis of Montferrat, who succeeded through the aid of sir John Hawkwood and the English companies, whom he sought in Provence, and led into Lombardy.

After the death of Galeas, his son John Galeas, count de Vertus, reigned with great power, and at the beginning was much beloved in Lombardy for his prudent and wise conduct. He abolished the most oppressive taxes his father had imposed, and was so popular that all spoke well of him; but when he had so far succeeded, he shewed his natural disposition, which he had long restrained. He laid an ambuscade for his uncle, sir Bernabo, who thought himself on the best terms with him; and, when he was taken, he was told that one lord was sufficient for Lombardy. He could not obtain any favour, for the power was against him, and, being carried to a castle, was put to death, but how I know not.

Sir Bernabo had many fine children; and the queen of France is the daughter of one that was married to the duke of Austria and Bavaria. Sir Galeas seized all the children of his uncle he could lay hands on, as well as his possessions, which he annexed to his own, and reigned in great splendour and wealth. He shortly after renewed the taxes he had taken off, and extorted money from his subjects, by every means of imposition, which made him more feared than loved. He followed the errors of his father, declaring and maintaining, that he would never believe in, nor adore God: in consequence, he deprived the monasteries of great part of their revenues, which he appropriated to himself, saying, the monks lived too delicately on rich food and choice wines; that such superfluities prevented them rising at midnight

night to perform their church duties, and that Saint Benedict had not thus framed his laws for their conduct, but he would bring them back to eggs and thin wine, that their voices may be louder and clearer to chaunt in the church.

Thus did sir Galeas, father and son, and sir Bernabo, act like popes in their dominions as long as they lived: they did much injustice to churchmen, without fearing any thing the popes might say or do against them; and when the schism happened, and the two popes of Rome and Avignon were excommunicating each other, these lords of Milan laughed at both, as indeed did many other great lords.

The daughter of this sir John Galeas, duchess of Orleans, inherited more of the dispositions of her father than of her mother, who was a princess of France; for she was envious, and covetous of the pomp of this world, and would gladly have seen her lord king of France, no matter how. A scandalous report was very current, that the disorder of the king, which had so much distressed the kingdom, and baffled all the skill of the physicians, was owing to her. I will say what gave rise to these suspicions, and made them the more readily believed.

Valentina, duchess of Orleans, had a handsome son of the age of the dauphin of France, and while these two children were playing together in the chamber of the duchess, a poisoned apple was thrown on the floor, near the dauphin, in hopes he would take it, but, through God's providence,

he did not. The son of the duchess, thinking no harm, ran and eat it, but he had no sooner put it into his mouth than death followed, in spite of every care to prevent it. Those who had the government of the dauphin carried him away, and never allowed him afterward to enter the apartments of the duchess. This story caused great murmurings in Paris and elsewhere, and the people were so enraged against her, as to occasion the duke to hear of it: they publicly said in Paris, that if she was not prevented from being near the king, they would come and take her away by force and put her to death, for that she intended to poison the king and all his family, having already made him suffer by her enchantments. What gave additional weight to this, was the king's refusal, during his illness, to see the queen, whom he would not recollect, nor any other person than the duchess of Orleans.

The duke of Orleans, to put an end to these scandalous reports, took her away from the hôtel de Saint Pol himself, and sent her to one of his castles called Asnieres, on the road to Beauvais, where she remained some time without ever passing the gates of the castle. She was removed thence to Neuschâtel on the Loire, and the duke hated her much for the accident which had happened to his son: his other fine children, however, softened his resentment to her.

Intelligence of this was carried to Milan, and sir Galeas heard with fear the great danger his daughter was in. He was very wroth with the king of France

France and his ministers, and sent sir James de la Bernie, with other noble persons, ambassadors to France, to excuse his daughter, and to say, that if any knight should accuse her of treason, he would provide a person to challenge him to mortal combat. At the time these ambassadors came to Paris, the king was in tolerable health ; but very little attention was paid them, or to the excuses they made for the duchess of Orleans, and they received a short answer.

When they saw this, they returned to Milan to relate to the duke what they had seen and heard. The duke was more angered than before, and sent his defiance to the king and kingdom of France ; but, when it was brought, the most gallant part of the French chivalry had already set our for Hungary, and were now entered into Turkey. From spite to the king of France, the duke of Milan had formed an alliance with Bajazet; and by his means was the sultan regularly informed of all that was passing in Christendom, and the secret history of France.

We will now leave this matter, and say how the sultan Bajazet and the Christian barons and knights in Turkey prospered.

CHAP. XXXVI;

WHILE BAJAZET IS RAISING A GREAT ARMY TO
OPPOSE THE HUNGARIANS AND FRENCH, THE
LORD DE COUCY, DURING THE SIEGE OF NI-
COPOLI, DEFEATS A LARGE BODY OF TURKS
WITH AN INFERIOR FORCE.

BAJAZET made no long stay at Cairo with the sultan of Babylon, who promised to send a great army to his aid under the command of his best men at arms, that he might successfully oppose the barons and knights of France. They dispatched messengers on all sides to all who they imagined could assist, begging they would exert themselves in this affair, which was become of the greatest consequence; for, should the French conquer Turkey, all the surrounding kingdoms would tremble, their religion be destroyed, and themselves reduced to slavery under the Christians, and it were far better to die before such events should happen.

Many Saracen kings obeyed the summons which Bajazet and the sultan of Babylon had sent as far as Persia, Media and Tartary, and to the north to the kingdom of Lecto*, beyond the frontiers of Prussia. The Saracen monarchs, having heard the army of the Christians was composed of

* Lecto. MS. Locco.

the

the flower of their chivalry, selected from their own sect those of the greatest ability, and who had been longest trained to arms; so that their armament was not soon ready to march, nor their purveyances prepared.

It was the intention of Bajazet to raise a force sufficient to withstand the Christians: he therefore began his march towards Turkey, followed by large companies from various parts. Tartary, Persia and Media, sent him many valiant Saracens, who were impatient for the combat, and to try their force against the Christians.

We will now leave Bajazet, and return to the Christians who were besieging the strong city of Nicopoli.

The garrison was very numerous, and defended the place valiantly against the attacks of their enemies, but expressed themselves much surprised that they heard nothing of Bajazet. The emperor of Constantinople had indeed written to say, that he was still in the country about Alexandria.

The besieging army lay before Nicopoli, having provision in abundance which came to them from Hungary and the surrounding countries. During the siege, the lord de Coucy and some other French knights took a fancy to make an expedition farther into Turkey, for they were tired of remaining so long inactive, while the king of Hungary should continue his approaches to the town. The lord de Coucy, as commander in chief, left the camp with about five hundred lances

and as many cross-bows, on horseback, accompanied by the lords de Roye, de Saint Py, the governor of Beauvoir, the lord de Montcaurel, the borgne de Montquel, and several more. They selected as guides some of the best mounted Hungarian scouts, well acquainted with the country, to lead them where they thought was probable to meet the enemy.

This same week, the Turks likewise took the field to the amount of twenty thousand men; for, having heard the Christians were destroying and burning their country, they determined to put an end to it. They collected in the force I have said, and advanced to a pass through which it was necessary the Christians should march to enter the open country, for there was no other entrance. Having remained there for two days without hearing any thing of the enemy, they were on the point of returning the third day, when the Hungarian scouts came galloping * to the place where the Turks lay in ambush. When they thus saw them, they kept quiet to observe the Christians without making any sally or throwing a lance.

The Christians advanced near to the Turks, and, although they could not see the whole, found they were very numerous. After a short stay, they returned to inform the lord de Coucy and

* It is in D. Sauvage 'came to Brechaut'; but the MS. in the Museum has it as in the text, and my MS. 'brochant' (spurring) instead of 'courant.'

the other lords what they had seen: The Christians were rejoiced on hearing it, and the lord de Coucy said,—‘ We must advance, and see what kind of people they are; for, since we are come thus far, we must not return without offering them combat, otherwise we may be blamed.’

‘ You are in the right,’ answered such lords as heard him.

They then tightened their armour, regirthed their horses, and advanced at a gentle pace to where the Turks lay. There was a small wood between the two parties: when the French knights came to it, they halted, and the lord de Coucy said to sir Reginald de Roye and the lord de Saint Py,—‘ I would advise, in order to draw the Turks out of their ambush, that you two advance with one hundred of our men, while we post the remainder in this wood. The Turks, seeing so small a party, will quit their ambush: do you suffer yourselves to be pursued, and, when past this wood, wheel round on them: we will instantly fall forth, and thus inclose and conquer them at our pleasure.’

This plan was adopted, and the two knights set off with about one hundred of the best mounted: the main body, to the amount of eight hundred men of tried courage, entered the wood, where they hid themselves. The others galloped towards the Turks, who were much pleased, thinking what they saw was the whole force of the enemy: they quitted their ambuscade and advanced on the plain. The Christian lords, observing this, turned

turned about, and suffered themselves to be pursued, but, as they were so well mounted, the Turks could not come up with them. Both parties passed the wood without the ambush being noticed, when the lord de Coucy sallied forth with his men, shouting, ‘Our Lady for the lord de Coucy !’ and, falling on the rear of the Turks, struck down many.

The Turks halted, on finding themselves thus surrounded, and made the best defence they could ; but it little availed, for, not suspecting any forces behind, they were thunderstruck when they were attacked on all sides. The French displayed great valour, and overthrew all that opposed them : they slew heaps on the field, and killed all they overtook in their flight like wild beasts. They shewed mercy to none, and happy were they who could save themselves. After this defeat, the French returned in the evening to the camp before Nicopoli.

News was spread throughout the army that the lord de Coucy had, by his valour, overthrown more than fifteen thousand Turks. Very many were loud in his praise for this action, but not so the count d’Eu ; for he said, ‘ the expedition had been undertaken through vanity, and that he saw nothing praiseworthy in it, as it had put the detachment under his command in great risk, by attacking so very superior a force. It was, beside, his duty (since he was so eager to perform some deeds of arms, and had met the Turks in the field) to have sent information of his intention to the commander

commander in chief, the count de Nevers, who was anxious to gain renown.' Thus, through envy as it may be supposed, did the count d'Eu speak of the lord de Coucy. During the whole expedition, he never had any friendship for him, notwithstanding he saw that he was beloved and respected by all the French and foreign knights, which, he imagined, should have been his due; for he was very nearly connected by blood with the king of France, and bore for arms the flower de lutes with a bar, and was besides constable of France.

Such was the beginning of the hatred of the count d'Eu to the gallant lord de Coucy, which at last broke out, and caused the destruction of the Christian army, as you will soon have related.

We will now leave this subject, and return to what was passing between the kings of France and England.

CHAP. XXXVII.

THE DUKE OF GUELDRES PREVENTS THE EARL OF DERBY JOINING THE COUNTS OF HAINAUT AND OF OSTREVANT IN THEIR EXPEDITION AGAINST FRIESLAND—NEGOTIATIONS FOR PEACE BETWEEN FRANCE AND ENGLAND ARE CONTINUED UNTIL KING RICHARD CROSSES OVER TO CALAIS, TO CONCLUDE THEM WITH THE DUKE OF BURGUNDY.

YOU have before heard in this history that the marriage of the king of England with a princess of France was nearly approaching ; that the two kings shewed great affection to each other, as did the relatives on either side, excepting the duke of Gloucester. But he had no joy in it ; for he knew that, by this connection, peace would be established between the two kingdoms, which he would unwillingly see, for he only wished for war, and excited all whom he thought so inclined, to throw every obstacle in the way. At that time, there was a knight in his service called sir John Baquigay*, a reserved man, who knew all the secrets of the duke, and who, by encouraging his warlike dispositions, followed the natural bent of his own inclinations.

* Baquigay.—Museum MS. Hacquingay.—Hafod MS. Laquingay.

At this period, the duke of Gueldres came to England to visit the king and his uncles, and to offer his legal services, for he was so bounden by faith and homage. The duke would gladly have seen the king making preparations for war, for he disliked peace. The duke of Gueldres had many conversations with the duke of Lancaster respecting the intended expedition of the counts of Hainault and of Ostrevant against Friesland ; for at this moment Fierabras de Vertain was in England, having been sent thither by the count d'Ostrevant to seek men at arms and archers.

The earl of Derby had been requested to accompany his cousins of Hainault and Ostrevant, to which he was well inclined, and had told Fierabras that he should be well pleased to go to Friesland, if it met the approbation of the king and his father. When, therefore, the duke of Gueldres came to England, the duke of Lancaster spoke to him on this subject, and desired him to say what he thought of it. He replied, ‘ that the expedition would be attended with much danger ; that Friesland was not a country easily conquered, and that many counts of Holland and Hainault, who in former times claimed it as their inheritance, had marched thither with great force, to bring it under their subjection, but had never returned. The Frieslanders are a people void of honour and understanding, and shew mercy to none who fall in their way. They pay no respect to any lord, however great his rank ; and their country is very strong, surrounded by the sea, and full of bogs, islands

islands and marshes, so that no persons can find their way through it but the natives. I have been much pressed to join this expedition, but I will never enter such a country ; and I would not advise that my cousin of Derby go thither, for it is not suitable to him.

‘ I am satisfied my brother-in-law d’Ostrevent will undertake the expedition, for he is very eager to do so, and will lead many Hainaulters with him, but there is a chance if any of them ever come home again.’

This speech of the duke of Gueldres had such an effect on the duke of Lancaster, that he resolved in his own mind the earl of Derby should not go to Friesland. He signified to him secretly his intentions, for his son did not live with him, and that, notwithstanding the engagements he had entered into, he must break them off, for neither the king nor himself would consent that he should go on this expedition.

Thus did the duke of Gueldres prevent the count of Hainault and his son from having the company of the earl of Derby, in which respect he was not well advised, nor was he thanked by either; but he was by nature all his life proud and envious.

Fierabras de Vertain, notwithstanding this disappointment, was not the less diligent in collecting forces, and had engaged many knights and squires with more than two hundred archers. But the earl of Derby excused himself for the reasons above mentioned. His excuses were accepted, for they

cester is violently against it, and he leads the Londoners as he wills, and may attempt to stir up a rebellion in the country, and raise the people against me. Now, consider the danger I should run if there were a second rebellion, headed by the duke of Gloucester and other great barons and knights who are, as I know, of his way of thinking. I am puzzled how to act, for my uncle of Gloucester is of so reserved a nature, no one knows his real thoughts.'

' My lord,' answered the count de St. Pol, ' you must gain him over by fair and kind speeches. Make him handsome presents, and, should he demand any thing, however unreasonable, grant it him instantly. This is the only means to gain him ; and, if you continue such conduct until your marriage be completed, your queen brought hither, and all affairs concluded, you may then follow a different method ; for you will be powerful enough to crush all your enemies or rebellious subjects, as the king of France will at all times be ready to assist you, and this you may securely depend upon.'

' In God's name, brother-in-law,' said the king, ' you speak to the purpose, and it shall be as you advise.'

The count de Saint Pol was lodged in London during his stay in England ; but he had frequent conferences with the king at Eltham, and with the duke of Lancaster on the subject of the marriage. It had been ordered at Paris, as the count told the king, that the king of France and his uncles would come

come to Saint Omer, and bring the young princess with them who was to be queen of England. It was therefore their wish that the king of England should come to Calais, and that, between the towns of Saint Omer, and Calais, an interview should take place between the two kings, who from personal knowledge would have their affections much strengthened ; and then there might be some secret treaties made respecting a peace between them and their uncles, without employing too many persons in the business, before the king carried his queen to England. If a peace could not be concluded, the truce was then to be prolonged for the term of thirty or forty years between France, England, and their allies.

This proposal seemed so fair and honourable to the king of England and his council, that orders were instantly issued for purveyances of every kind to be made ready for the king's voyage and residence at Calais. Many lords did the same. The duke and duchess of Gloucester, with their children, were invited by the king to be of the party, as were the dukes and duchesses of York and Lancaster : this last lady, being with her lord at Eltham, had already been asked.

The king and the count de Saint Pol travelled together through Canterbury to Dover, followed by all the lords who had been invited to accompany him. In truth, the count de Saint Pol, from his impatience to carry the news to the king of France, crossed the sea on

his arrival at Dover to Boulogne, and hastened thence to Paris, and related to the king and his uncles every thing which had passed with the king of England. This gave general satisfaction, and the king and court set out from Paris, and by short days journeys came to Amiens. In the mean time, the king of England, his uncles, and a large train of lords and ladies, had crossed the sea to Calais, where they were lodged. The duke of Burgundy came to St Omer to press forward the treaties, which were carried on through the mediation of the count de Pol and Robert the hermit.

The duke of Burgundy was conducted by the count de Saint Pol to Calais on the eve of our Lady the middle of August, to wait on the king of England and his uncles. He was welcomed with joy by the king and his lords; and they conferred together for some time on the articles for a peace, to which the king inclined: indeed, to say the truth, he was indifferent what might be agreed on, provided he had his wife. When the duke of Burgundy had staid at Calais two days negotiating a peace, the king told him that he would lay all the articles on his return to England before the parliament; for that neither himself nor his lords could agree to any thing conclusive without the assent of the people of England, and it must be deferred until their will were known. He added, that he himself would go over, and return, and so make one journey for the conclusion

elusion of all things. ‘That will be well done,’ replied the duke of Burgundy and the count de Saint Pol, who returned to St. Omer, and thence to Amiens, where they expected to meet the king and queen of France with their daughter, the future queen of England. The dukes of Berry and Brittany were also there; for the king of France had sent for the last mentioned duke, who came thither in grand array.

The king of England and his lords returned to London; but their ladies remained until they should come back, which was speedily done. During this period, the expedition from Hainault against the Frieslanders took place, commanded by the earl of Hainault and his son the count d’Ostrevant. We will relate the arrangement of it, for it is now time.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

THE COUNTS OF HAINAULT AND OF OSTREVANT RAISE A LARGE ARMY OF MEN AT ARMS, KNIGHTS AND SQUIRES, TO INVADE FRIESLAND.—THE KING OF FRANCE SENDS THEM ASSISTANCE, UNDER THE COMMAND OF COUNT WALERAN DE ST. POL AND THE LORD CHARLES D'ALBRET.

YOU have before heard the great desire duke Albert of Bavaria and his son William count d'Ostrevant had to invade Friesland, and to employ their arms in the conquest of it. The knights and squires of Hainault, Holland and Zealand, were willing to second them, because they thought it was their lawful inheritance. To gain assistance, the count d'Ostrevant had sent one of his squires, a renowned man at arms, called Fierabras de Vertain, to England, where he had been successful: king Richard, out of affection to his cousin, had sent him some men at arms, and two hundred archers, under the command of three English lords; one was named Cornewall, another Colleville, but the name of the third, who was a squire, I have forgotten: It was told me, and likewise that he was a gallant man at arms, and had been long used to war: a short time before, he had in a riot had his chin cut off, which

which was replaced by one of silver that was fastened by a silken cord tied round his head. This force arrived at Enchuysen in proper time.

To be more particular in this matter, I must say that I was informed duke Albert held many consultations with his son, the count d'Ostrevant, and they called into their councils a noble and valiant squire, named William de Croembourg*, who earnestly exhorted them to the war, for he mortally hated the Frieslanders. He had done them some mischief, and did them much more, as you shall hear.

Duke Albert of Bavaria set out from the Hague in company with his son, the count d'Ostrevant, for Hainault, and convened the states of that country at Mons, who readily obeyed the summons of their lord. He laid before them his wish to invade Friesland, and remonstrated on his right to do so, and the lawful claim he had on it. In proof of this, he had read to them certain letters patent, apostolical and imperial, authentically sealed with lead and gold, which evidently shewed his right over that country. The duke addressed the meeting,—‘ My lords, and valiant men our subjects, you know that every one ought to guard and defend his inheritance, and that man, in the defence of himself or country, has a right to make war. You know also, that the Frieslanders ought to acknowledge themselves our subjects, but

* Croembourg.—In my MS. Croemebourc. Museum MS. Curembourc.

they are rebellious against us, and against our rights, like men without law or religion.

' Notwithstanding the justice of our claim, we cannot, my very dear lords, without your personal and pecuniary aid, attempt to make these people listen to reason. We therefore entreat your assistance in this necessity, both personal and pecuniary, that we may subjugate these disobedient Frieslanders to our will.'

To this remonstrance the three estates unanimously assented; and, as they were always inclined to comply with the desires of their lord, they presented duke Albert, from the country of Hainault, the sum of thirty thousand francs in ready money, without including the town of Valenciennes. This town performed equally well its duty, for duke Albert, attended by his son, went thither, and made a similar request to what he had done so successfully at Mons.

These two valiant princes were very joyful to see their subjects so forward to assist their war, as it assured them they were well beloved by them. Since they had now a sufficiency of money, they resolved to inform the king of France of their intended expedition, and to request aid from him. Two prudent and valiant knights, the lord de Ligne and the lord de Jumont, were sent thither, and acquitted themselves well, for they were much in favour with the French, especially the lord de Ligne, whom the king, from his partiality to him, had made one of his chamberlains. He proposed to the king of France the request

request of his lord, duke Albert of Bavaria, so eloquently, that he and his council promised the assistance he required. The duke of Burgundy was urgent for its being granted, because his daughter having married the duke's son, he thought, if the expedition were successful, it would be for the advantage of the count d'Ostrevant.

Many of the great barons disapproved of it, and spoke against it, saying,—‘ How can these Hainaulters come hither to solicit aid from our king, when they have already been to ask the same from the English ? Have we not lately seen that the count d'Ostrevant has accepted of the order of the Garter, which is the English device ? Has he shewn, by so doing, any very great affection for France ? ’ But others, who were better informed, replied,—‘ My fair sirs, you are wrong to talk thus : if the count d'Ostrevant has accepted the Garter, it was not to ally himself with England ; for he is too strongly connected with the French. Is it not true that he has married the lady Catherine, daughter to the duke of Burgundy ? and is not this a better and more valuable alliance than the blue Garter ? Never, therefore, say that he will not prefer doing services to the French rather than to the English. The king will honour himself and exalt the French name, if he give him the aid he has been wisely advised to afford.’

Thus did the French converse on these matters, which made a great noise in France, for nothing was talked of but the deeds of arms that were to be performed in Hungary or Turkey against

against Bajazet, and in Friesland against the Frieslanders. The king of France did not delay raising an army of five hundred lances, composed of Picards and French, and gave the command of them to the count Waleran de St. Pol and the lord Charles d'Albret, two knights that were well qualified for the business. They were to lead this body of men to the town of Enchuyzen in lower Friesland, as that was the place of assembly for the whole army, and they were to embark there for upper Friesland, which they did.

When the two valiant knights, the lord de Ligne and the lord de Jumont, saw the good inclination of the king, and were assured that every order had been given, and the pay issued for the men at arms who were to be sent to assist the count of Hainault, they took leave of the king of France, and, thanking him for his friendship to their lords, returned to Hainault, to relate to the duke of Bavaria and the count d'Ostrevant how successful they had been. They were received with the honours they had deserved, and detailed the courteous answers they received from the king of France and the duke of Burgundy, who had feasted them grandly, and the rich presents that were given them, for which they thanked the duke and his son, as it was from affection to them they had been shewn such courtesy. The whole would be too long to relate : we will therefore pass it over, and come to the principal matter.

Duke Albert, on hearing that the king of France was to send to his assistance five hundred lances,
assembled

cessary, each according to his power, to assist him in his intended expedition against Friesland; and that, out of affection to him, and regard to their own honour and renown, they would accompany him to his town of Enchuyzen, in lower Friesland, and to Meemelie*, and thence embark with him for upper Friesland, where he proposed being, if it pleased God, by the middle of August ensuing, and that he would wait for them in one or other of the two before-mentioned towns; that it was his intention to go thither beforehand to make the necessary preparations, and to receive his men at arms, and such Hollanders and Zealanders as would be induced to enter his service, and aid him to the accomplishment of his purposes.'

All the knights, squires and lords in Hainault instantly complied with his request, and promised him their services like loyal vassals. Duke Albert and the count d'Ostrevant found them punctual in the performance of their promises, and they made themselves speedily ready, so that about the beginning of August of the year 1396, they assembled, and marched off in companies, handsomely arrayed, towards Antwerp, where they were to embark for Enchuyzen, the general rendezvous.

You may suppose, that when all these preparations were making for the departure of so many

* Meemelie.—British Museum MS. Metenelich. Hafod MS. Metmelic. Q. if not Medendric, which is not far from Enchuyzen.

knights and squires, the ladies and damsels were not in high spirits. We must allow they were very much cast down, for they saw their fathers, brothers, uncles, husbands and lovers, going on a dangerous expedition, not having forgotten how, in former times, the Hainaulters with count William had remained on the field of battle in Friesland. They were therefore fearful that what had happened to their predecessors might befall them, and loudly praised the duchess of Brabant for having forbidden any gentleman or others of her country to take part in this expedition.

The ladies frequently pressed their lovers and friends to decline going, and many meetings were holden, but to little purpose. They were particularly angry with Fierabras bastard de Vertain, for they said he was the principal promoter of this expedition.

Duke Albert and his son, on leaving Mons after the promise of the Hainaulters to assist them, returned to Zealand, and made similar requests to the Zealanders, who in like manner complied; and the lord de la Vere, sir Floris de Boefsel, Floris d'Abel, the lord de Zenemberge, sir Clais de Boysel and Philip de Cortien, were very instrumental in forwarding the business. They as well as many other gentlemen instantly armed, and put themselves in handsome array, plainly shewing they were desirous to gain renown.

CHAP. XXXIX.

THE EARL OF HAINAULT LANDS WITH HIS ARMY IN FRIESLAND.—HE DEFEATS THE FRIESLANDERS IN BATTLE, BUT IS NEVERTHELESS FORCED TO RETIRE TO HOLLAND, TO PASS THE WINTER, WITHOUT HAVING GAINED ANY THING IN FRIESLAND.

THE duke of Bavaria and his son, having been so successful in Hainault and Zealand, made the same requests to the Hollanders, especially to the barons and chief towns. To say the truth, the Hollanders were much pleased to hear war was about to be made on the Frieslanders: they hated them, particularly the knights and squires, for there was a continual warfare carried on, and they mutually plundered each other on the frontiers of the two countries. When the great lords in Holland, such as the lord d'Atrel and other gallant knights and squires, heard the supplications of their princes, duke Albert and his son count William, they immediately offered their services, and promised them every assistance. They were speedily armed, and the principal towns supplied them with a large body of cross-bows, pikemen and men at arms. It was not long before they were all assembled at Enchuyzen, where vessels had been provided to carry them to Friesland. They were so numerous, they were said to be

be thirty thousand sailors, and that the town of Harlem alone had supplied twelve hundred. These vessels were amply freighted with warlike stores and other necessaries. You may imagine the grief of the ladies and damsels in Holland and Zealand was not less than those of Hainault, when they found their lovers and relations were engaged in this war. Their anger fell chiefly on the lord de Cruembourg, because they thought he had been the great adviser of duke Albert in the matter, and on the lord de Merebbede. This last was eager for revenge on the Frieslanders for the injuries they had done him: in the before mentioned battle, when count William was unfortunately slain, he had lost three and thirty of his relations, bearing his arms on their coats, with sir Daniel de Merebbede their leader; none of whom would the Frieslanders ransom. These two lords, therefore, were afraid to appear before the princesses and ladies of duke Albert's court.

In a short time, the whole army was assembled: the English came first, next the Hainaulters in very handsome array, under the command of the lord sénéchal de Jumont, and the lord de Gomegines, who was marshal; then the Hollanders and Zealanders: but the French did not come so soon as expected, which delayed the embarkation eleven days. During this interval, there arose a quarrel between the English and Hollanders; and, had it not been for the count d'Ostrevant, the English would have been slain. The quarrel was made up; and the French arrived, to the joy of all, for

for they consisted of a well-appointed body of men at arms.

Every one was now ordered instantly to embark, which being done, they hoisted sail, recommended themselves to God, and put to sea. The water was smooth, and seemed to take pleasure in bearing them. There were such numbers of vessels that, had they been arranged in a line from Enchuyzen to Kuynder (which is in upper Friesland, and where they intended to land), though twelve leagues distant, the whole sea would have been covered; but they sailed in one body.

We will for a while leave them, and speak of the Frieslanders, who, as I was informed, had been long acquainted with duke Albert's intention of marching against them with a powerful army. They held many councils on the subject, and determined to combat their enemies at the very moment of their landing; for they said they should prefer death with liberty, to being slaves; and would never quit the battle while alive. They also resolved not to accept of ransoms for any person, however high his rank, but to put their prisoners to death, or keep them in banishment from their own countries.

Among these was a Frieslander of high birth and renown: he was of great strength and stature, for he was taller by a head than all his countrymen. His name was Yves Jovere; but the Hollanders, Zealanders and Hainaulters called him 'The great Frieslander.' This valiant man had gained much reputation in Prussia, Hungary, Turkey,

key, Rhodes and Cyprus, where he had performed such deeds of valour that he was much spoken of. When he heard his countrymen thus readily resolve on battle, he addressed them,—‘ O ye noble men, and free Frieslanders, know that there is no fortune stable. If in former times you have, by your prowes, conquered the Hainaulters, Hollanders and Zealanders, those who are now about to invade us are men expert in war, and be assured they will act otherwise than their predecessors : you will see they will not fly, but fight with the utmost prudence. I would therefore advise that we suffer them to land and make what progress they can into the country : let us guard our towns and fortresses, and give up to them the plains, where they will waste themselves. Our country will not long support them. It is beside cut up with ditches and dykes, so that they cannot advance far into the interior, and they will be forced to return after having burnt ten or twelve villages. This they will the more speedily do, for they cannot ride, nor indeed without difficulty march on foot, through the country, which will wear them out. The damage they can do will be trifling, and we can soon repair it; but, if we offer them battle, I very much fear we shall be overpowered, for I have been credibly informed they are one hundred thousand men under arms.’

He said truly, for they were at least as many, if not more.

Three valiant Friesland knights, sir Feu de
Vol. XI. T Dore-

Dorekerque, sir Gerard Cavin and sir Tiny de Walturg, seconded this proposal; but the people would not listen to it, and they were supported by several of those noble men called Elins, who are gentlemen and judges of causes. They opposed what the great Frieslander had offered with such success, as to occasion it to be determined, that as soon as they should hear of the enemy landing, they were to march and offer them combat. This being resolved on, the assembly broke up, that every one might make his preparations. To say the truth, they were in general very poorly armed: many had no other defensive covering than their waistcoats made of coarse thick cloth, scarcely better than horse cloths. Some were armed in leather, others with rusty jackets of mail, which seemed unfit for service; but there were some perfectly well armed.

When the Frieslanders were ready to march, they took from their churches the crosses and banners, and divided themselves into three battalions, each consisting of about ten thousand men: they halted, on arriving at a pass defended by a ditch, very near to where the Hainault army was to land, and saw plainly the Hainaulters, Hollanders and Zealanders, for they were close to the shore, and preparing to disembark. It was on Saint Bartholomew's day, which this year fell on a Sunday, that duke Albert and his army landed in Friesland.

The

The Frieslanders, noticing the movements of their enemies, sallied forth, to the amount of about six thousand, and mounted the dykes to see if they could any way prevent their landing. Among the Frieslanders, there was a sort of mad woman dressed in blue cloth, who, quitting her countrymen, rushed forward towards the Hainaulters and Hollanders, making ready for battle. When she had approached the army within bow-shot, she turned her back, and, raising up her petticoats and shift, shewed her bare rump to all who wished to see it, bawling out some words in her own language, which meant, 'Take this for your welcome.' Those on ship-board, seeing the wickedness of this woman, let fly such a shower of arrows and bolts that her legs and thighs were larded with them; for it seemed a shower of snow, so many were the arrows shot at her. Several leaped into the water, and, pursuing this wretched woman with drawn swords, soon overtook her, and cut her into a thousand pieces. In the mean time, the debarkation was taking effect; and the Hainaulters marched to the enemy, who received them courageously, with long pikes, and staves shod with iron, and repulsed them vigorously. The landing was strongly contested, and numbers were killed and wounded; but from the advantages of their bows and cross-bows, and by their superior mode of fighting, the Hainaulters gained the dyke, and remained victors on the field at this first attack.

When they were all disembarked, they ranged themselves along the dyke, each under his banner, and, when thus drawn up, their line extended more than half a league. The Frieslanders, on their loss of the dyke, retreated to another pass, where they had cast up the earth in their front, and the ditch was very deep : they amounted to about thirty thousand, and, as they were at no great distance, were plainly seen by the Hainaulters and their allies, from their position on the dyke. Each party remained on the ground : in the mean time, the whole army was landed, with their baggage, and some tents were pitched, under which they repos'd themselves during the Sunday and Monday, observing the Frieslanders, with whom on these two days there were many skirmishes and deeds of arms.

Both armies were ready prepared for battle on the Tuesday morning : and many new knights were made of the Hainaulters, Hollanders and Zealanders, when it was resolved to attack the enemy. They drew up in handsome array, placing their archers in front, intermixed with the ranks, and, with trumpets sounding, marched to pass the ditch. The Frieslanders guarded themselves from the arrows by means of the mound of earth thrown from the ditch, which was as high as their heads ; but the Hollanders leaped into the ditch, and made bridges of their pikes and lances. The enemy defended themselves valiantly, and gave such rude blows on those who attempted to mount

mount the bank, that they drove them on their backs into the ditch. In short, so many valorous deeds were done, it is impossible to recount them all; but the Hainaulters and their allies were too strongly armed, and the Frieslanders could not otherwise hurt them than by knocking them down.

The new knights acquitted themselves honourably, but the enemy displayed great courage: they are a lusty race, though very badly armed, and some of them without shoes or stockings; notwithstanding which, they made an obstinate defence. During this skirmish, the lord de Ligne, the sénéchal of Hainault and the lord de Jumont, with other Hainault knights, following the course of the ditch, found a passage for their horses, and fell on the rear of the Frieslanders, to their utter dismay. They quitted the defence of the ditch to repel this last attack; but the Hainaulters charged them so vigorously, that the enemy were broken and dispersed, and the Hollanders and Zealanders crossed the ditch and joined in the fray. The battle was now very murderous; and the Frieslanders gave destructive blows with the axes they had armed themselves with, which served them to fell timber; but the great Frieslander, Yves Jouvere, lost his life. Not long after this, the Frieslanders yielded the field, and took to flight as fast as they could. The carnage in the pursuit was horrible, for none were spared: the Hollanders, in particular, killed all they could overtake: even such as had been made prisoners by the English, French

and Hainaulters, they killed while in their hands.

The lord William de Cruembourg, and his two sons, John and Henry, who had that morning been knighted, acquitted themselves gallantly, and were the most active in slaying the Frieslanders, shewing clearly they loved them not. To conclude, the Frieslanders were completely defeated, and the greater part killed: some few were made prisoners, and about fifty carried to the Hague, where they remained a long time.

The lord of Kuynder, who was the lord of the town where duke Albert had landed, had surrendered himself to the duke on the Monday, and himself and two sons were in the battle against the Frieslanders. They lived afterwards under the protection of duke Albert and his son count William.

After this defeat, the Hainaulters, Hollanders, Zealanders, French and English quartered themselves about Kuynder, and took several towns and castles; but their captures were inconsiderable, for the Frieslanders did them much harm by ambuscades and skirmishes. If they made any prisoners, they had no ransom to offer; and it was seldom they would surrender, but fought until they were slain, saying they preferred death and liberty to being under the subjection of any lord whatever. Their friends or relations never brought any ransoms for those who were taken, but left them to die in prison. The Frieslanders offered their prisoners in exchange, man for man; but, when

when their enemies had none to give in return, they put them to death.

When the Hainault army had been in the country about five weeks, and had destroyed and burnt many towns and villages, of little value indeed, the weather began to be very cold and to rain almost daily: there were also great tempests at sea. Duke Albert and his son, in consequence, proposed the return of the army to lower Friesland, whence they had come, and to march into Holland, the more comfortably to pass the winter, which had set in very hard. This was done; and, on their arrival at Enchuyzen, the lords dismissed their men, particularly the strangers, with whom they were well contented, and paid them their full pay, thanking them at the same time for the services they had rendered.

Thus was this great army disbanded, without having made any conquest; but, two years after, these noble princes, duke Albert and his son count William, returned thither a second time, and made great conquests by their excellent prowess, which, if it please God, shall be fully recounted. But for the moment we will not say more, and relate the magnificent marriage of the king of England with the princess Isabella of France.

CHAP. XL.

THE CEREMONY OF THE MARRIAGE OF THE KING OF ENGLAND WITH A PRINCESS OF FRANCE.—THE KING OF FRANCE DELIVERS HER TO THE KING OF ENGLAND, IN HIS TENT BETWEEN ARDRES AND CALAIS.

YOU have before heard of the journey of the king of England to Calais, where he resided with his uncles, prelates and barons of his council, during which time he had held a conference with the duke of Burgundy respecting the articles of peace. The king had returned to London to wait the meeting of his parliament at Michaelmas; but in the mean time great purveyances were made, for him and for his barons, and sent to Calais and Guines. The larger part were forwarded down the river Thames, but a good deal was collected in Flanders, at Damme, Bruges and Sluys, which were sent by sea to Calais.

In like manner, great preparations were made for the king of France, the duke of Orleans, their uncles, and the barons and prelates of France, at Saint Omer, Aire, Therouenne, Ardres, à la Montoire, Leulinghen, and in all the monasteries and houses round about. No expence was spared on either side; and the lords of each country were emulous to outhine one another. In the abbey of

of Saint Bertin*, great were the preparations to receive the royal visitors.

The session of parliament, which usually lasts forty days, and is held in the king's palace at Westminster, was now abridged, for the king attended it only five days: when the business of the nation, and what particularly interested the king, and had caused his return from Calais, was settled, he and his two uncles of Lancaster and Gloucester, and the members of his council, set out from London, and crossed the sea to Calais. The duke of York and the earl of Derby did not attend the king, but remained behind to guard England in his absence.

Information was instantly sent to the French lords in Picardy of the king of England's return to Calais; and the duke and duchess of Burgundy came to Saint Omer, and fixed their residence in the abbey of Saint Bertin. The king of France sent the count de Saint Pol to king Richard, as soon as he heard of his arrival at Calais, to compliment him in his name, and to lay before him the orders which had been given for the ceremony of his marriage. The king of England eagerly listened to this, for he took much pleasure in the business. The count de Saint Pol, on his return to Saint Omer, was accompanied by the duke of Lancaster, his son Beaufort of Lancaster, the duke of Gloucester, with his son Humphrey, the earl of Rutland, the earl marshal, the earl of Huntingdon,

* Saint Bertin,—an abbey in the city of Saint Omer.
chamber-

chamberlain of England, and many other barons and knights, who were handsomely received by the duke and duchess of Burgundy. The duke of Brittany came thither also, having left the king of France and the young queen of England at Aire.

You must know that every honour and respect that could be imagined were paid to the English lords. The duchess of Burgundy entertained them splendidly at dinner; at which was present the duchess of Lancaster, with her son and two daughters. There was an immense variety of different dishes and decorations on the tables, and very rich presents made of gold and silver plate: nothing, in short, was spared, so that the English were astonished where such riches could come from, and especially the duke of Gloucester, who told his friends that the kingdom of France abounded in wealth and power. To soften the temper of the duke of Gloucester, whom the French lords knew to be proud, and their bitter enemy, they paid him the most flattering attentions. Notwithstanding this, and the handsome presents they offered, which he accepted, the same rancour remained in his breast, and, in spite of every thing the French could say or do, whenever the subject of peace was mentioned, his answers were as harsh and severe as ever. The French are very subtle; but, with regard to him, they could never gain his affections; and his conversation was so reserved, it was not possible to discover his real sentiments.

When

When the duke of Burgundy saw this, he said to his council,—‘ We shall never succeed until we gain over this duke of Gloucester : as long as he lives, there will not be any solid peace with England, for he will ever find some cause of quarrel, and renew the hatred of the people of both countries : his whole thoughts are on this subject ; and were it not for the amiable qualities of the king of England, which we hope may produce in time more favourable effects, in good truth he should never have our cousin as his wife.’

After the duchess of Burgundy, the countess of Nevers, the countess of Saint Pol, and the lords and ladies of France, had, as you have heard, magnificently entertained the English lords and ladies, (at which time it was determined when and where the two kings should meet, and the king of England receive his wife) the company took leave of each other, and the two dukes, with their duchesses and children, returned with the other barons and knights to Calais, and related to king Richard how grandly they had been received, and the rich presents that had been made them.

Their praises pleased the king ; for he was delighted whenever he heard the king of France or the French well spoken of, so much was he already enamoured with them, on account of the king’s daughter whom he was to marry.

Shortly after this, the king of France, accompanied by the duke of Brittany, came to Saint Omer, and was lodged in the abbey of Saint

Bertin ;

Bertin : all who had before occupied it were forced to dislodge. The dukes of Berry, Burgundy and Bourbon, having been ordered to confer with the king of England at Calais, set out from Saint Omer, and, on their arrival at Calais, were received with every honour and kindness by the king and his lords. They were entertained with splendour; and the three dukes concluded certain treaties with the king of England and his uncles. Many in France and England thought a peace had been concluded, for at that time the duke of Gloucester was well inclined to it, in consideration of the kind promises of the king, who had engaged, if a peace were made, to create his son Humphrey earl of Rochester, and make the annual revenue of it equal to two thousand pounds sterling, and to present the duke of Gloucester with fifty thousand nobles on his return to England.

Thus, through his avaricious disposition, was the duke of Gloucester softened in his opinions respecting a peace with France. It was so visible, that the French dukes observed it, for they had never before found him so tractable or moderate in his conversation. When the French lords had concluded the business they had come upon, they took leave of the king, and returned to the king of France and the duke of Orleans at Saint Omer, who were impatient to hear the success of their journey.

The king of France departed from Saint Omer, and resided in the fort of Ardres : the duke of Burgundy went to la Montoire, the duke of Brittany to the

the town of Esque, the duke of Berry to Tournehem. The plain was covered with tents and pavilions full of French and English. The king of England and the duke of Lancaster were lodged in Guines, and the duke of Gloucester at Hamme:

On the vigil of the feast of Saint Simon and Saint Jude*, which fell on a Friday, in the year of grace 1396, the two kings left their lodgings on the point of ten o'clock, and, accompanied by their attendants, went to the tents that had respectively been prepared for them. Thence they advanced on foot to a certain spot which had been fixed on for their meeting, and which was surrounded by four hundred French and as many English knights brilliantly armed, with swords in hand. These eight hundred knights were so drawn up, that the two kings passed between their ranks, conducted in the following order: the dukes of Lancaster and Gloucester supported the king of France, as did the dukes of Berry and Burgundy the king of England, and thus they advanced slowly through the ranks of the knights: when the two kings were on the point of meeting, the eight hundred knights fell on their knees and wept for joy. The two kings met bare headed, and, having saluted, took each other by the hand, when the king of France led the king of England to his tent, which was handsome and richly adorned: the four dukes took each other by the hand and fol-

* The feast of Saint Simon and Saint Jude is on the 28th October.

lowed them. The English and French knights remained at their post, looking at their opponents with good humour, and never stirred until the whole ceremony was over.

The spot where the two kings had met was marked, and a chapel in honour of the Virgin Mary was proposed to be erected on it, but I know not if it were ever put into execution. On the entrance of the two kings holding each other by the hand into the tent, the dukes of Orleans and of Bourbon came forward and cast themselves on their knees : the kings stopped and made them rise. The six dukes then assembled in front and conversed together : the kings passed on, and had some conversation, while the wine and spices were preparing. The duke of Berry served the king of France with the comfit box, and the duke of Burgundy with the cup of wine. In like manner was the king of England served by the dukes of Lancaster and Gloucester. After the kings had been served, the knights of France and England took the wine and spices, and served the prelates, dukes, princes and counts; and, after them, squires and other officers of the household did the same to all within the tent, until every one had partaken of the spices and wine ; during which time, the two kings freely conversed.

After a short space, the two monarchs took leave of each other, as did the different lords. The king of England and his uncles retired to their tents, while the horses were made ready : they then mounted, and took the road towards

Calais;

Calais ; the king to Guines, the dukes of Lancaster and Gloucester to Hamme, and the others to their lodgings at Calais.

In like manner did the king of France return to Ardres, accompanied by the duke of Orleans ; the duke of Berry to Tournehem, and the duke of Burgundy to la Montoire ; for nothing more was done that day, although the tents and pavilions of the king of France and other lords were left standing.

At 11 o'clock of the Saturday-morning, the feast of St. Simon and St. Jude, the king of England, attended by his uncles and all the noblemen who had accompanied him from England, waited on the king of France in his tent. They were received by the king, his brother and uncles, with great pomp and the most affectionate words. The dinner-tables were there laid out : that for the kings was long and handsome, and the side-board covered with the most magnificent plate.

The two kings were seated by themselves ; the king of France at the top of the table, and the king of England below him, but at a good distance from each other. They were served by the dukes of Berry, Burgundy and Bourbon : the last entertained the two monarchs with many gay remarks, to make them laugh, and those about the table, for he had much drollery, and, addressing the king of England, said,—‘ My lord king of England, you ought to make good cheer, for you have had all your wishes gratified. You have a wife, or shall have one, for she will be speedily delivered to

to you.' ' Bourbonnois,' replied the king of France, ' we wish our daughter were as old as our cousin of Saint Pol, though we were to double her dower, for then shç would love our son of England much more.'

The king of England heard well these words, and replied, bowing to the king of France (for he did not address himself to the duke of Bourbon, since the king had compared his daughter with the countess of Saint Pol's), ' Good father-in-law, the age of our wife pleases us right well: we pay not so much attention concerning her age, as we value your love, and that of our subjects, for we shall now be so strongly united that no king in Christendom can any way hurt us.'

When dinner was over, which lasted not long, the cloth was removed, the tables carried away, and wine and spices brought. After this, the young queen of England entered the tent, attended by a great number of ladies and damsels. The king led her by the hand, and gave her to the king of England, who instantly after took his leave. The queen was placed in a very rich litter which had been prepared for her; but, of all the French ladies who were there, only the lady of Coucy went with her, for there were many of the principal ladies of England, such as the duchesses of Lancaster, York, Gloucester, Ireland, the lady of Namur, the lady Poinings, and others of the nobility, who received queen Isabella with great joy. When the ladies were ready, the king of England and his lords departed, and, riding at a good

good pace, arrived at Calais. The king of France and his court returned to Saint Omer, where he had left the queen and duchess of Burgundy, and staid there the Sunday and Monday following. On the Tuesday, which was All-saints-day, the king of England was married by the archbishop of Canterbury, in the church of St. Nicholas at Calais, to the lady Isabella of France. Great were the feastings on the occasion, and the heralds and minstrels were so liberally paid they were satisfied.

On the ensuing Thursday, the dukes of Orleans and Bourbon came to Calais, to visit the king and queen of England: they staid that day, and on the following went back to dinner at St. Omer, where the king and queen of France waited for them. This same morning, the king and queen of England, having heard an early mass and drank some wine, embarked on board the vessels which had been prepared for them, with a favourable wind.

They weighed anchor, set their sails, and, in less than three hours, landed at Dover. The king dined at the castle, and lay the next night at Rochester: passing through Dartford, he arrived at his palace of Eltham, where the lords and ladies took leave of the king and queen, and went to their homes.

Fifteen days after, the queen made her entry into London grandly attended by lords, ladies and damsels. She lay one night in the Tower, seated on the banks of the Thames, and the next day was conducted in great pomp, through the streets, to

Westminster, where the king was waiting in his palace to receive her. This day, the Londoners made very rich presents to the queen, which were graciously accepted. During the time the court was at Westminster, a tournament was ordered to be held at Candlemas in Smithfield, between forty knights and as many squires; and notices of it were given to the heralds, that they might publish it beyond sea, and as far as Scotland.

When the king of France was returned to Paris after the marriage of his daughter, and his lords were gone to their residences, there were great rumours of war. It was said to have been settled, that at the beginning of March, the king was to lead a large army into Lombardy to destroy the duke of Milan; and that the king was so bent on this expedition, he would not listen to any thing that was said against it. The king of England was to send his father-in-law six thousand archers; and the duke of Brittany, who had been constantly with the king, offered his services on the expedition, with two thousand Breton spears. Purveyances were already making for the king and lords in Dauphiny and in Savoy.

When the duke of Brittany took leave of the king of France and his lords, to return to his duchy, I believe the duke of Burgundy made such earnest intercession with the king, and those immediately concerned, that the duke of Brittany carried with him his cousin sir Peter de Craon, who was confined a prisoner at his own charges, in the tower

tower of the Louvre, for the debt he had been sentenced to pay of one hundred thousand francs to the queen of Jerusalem. I imagine he engaged to pay the queen the above sum by instalments; but I will, for the present, leave speaking of these matters, and return to what was passing in Turkey.

CHAP. XLI.

THE CHRISTIANS ARE FORCED TO RAISE THE SIEGE OF NICOPOLI, BY THE ARRIVAL OF BAJAZET IN TURKEY.—THEY ARE DEFEATED, AND THE HUNGARIANS PUT TO FLIGHT, THROUGH THE PRESUMPTUOUS FOLLY OF THE FRENCH.

YOU have before read in our history how the king of Hungary, and the lords from France who had gone to Hungary in search of deeds of arms, had valiantly crossed the Danube, and entered Turkey; where during the summer, from the month of July, they had conquered a large tract of country, having mercifully spared the inhabitants and many towns and castles, for none could withstand their power. They had besieged the city of Nicopoli, and so hardly pressed it by their attacks, that it was on the point of sur-

U 2 render-

tendering, without hearing any intelligence of Bajazet.

The king of Hungary had even addressed the French lords, such as the count de Nevers, the count d'Eu, the count de la Marche, the count de Soissons, the lord de Coucy, and the barons and knights of Burgundy, saying,—‘ My fair sirs, thanks to God, we have made a successful campaign; for we have performed many brilliant deeds of arms, and have conquered Turkey. I look on the town of Nicopoli as our own, for it is so undermined it can hold out no longer than we please. I therefore would propose, that after we shall have gained and shewn mercy to this town, we attempt nothing more this season, but recross the Danube, and return to Hungary, where I have many handsome towns and castles prepared to receive you, since you have so gallantly assisted me against the Turks, my bitter enemies. During the winter, we will provide stores for the ensuing summer, each according to his pleasure, and send information of our situation, and what we have done, to the king of France, who, before that time, will send us large reinforcements; and I hope, when he shall know the success we have had, he may be inclined to come hither in person, for he is young and fond of arms. But whether he come or not, if it please God, we will next summer cross the Hellespont, regain Armenia, and thence march to Syria, with the towns of Jaffa and Baruth, and conquer Jerusalem and the Holy Land.

Should

Should the sultan oppose us, we will offer him battle, and never return without having combated him.'

Such was the speech of the king of Hungary to the French lords : they considered Nicopoli as won, but it fell out otherwise.

During the whole summer, Bajazet had been busily employed in raising an army of saracens and infidels : he had even sent to Persia for succour, and the great lords of his religion had joined him against Christendom. They had crossed the Hellespont to the amount of two hundred thousand; but the Christians were not only ignorant of their numbers, but of their approach ; and, they advanced so secretly, they were close to Nicopoli before the besiegers knew of their having begun their march. Bajazet was as well acquainted with the stratagems of war as most, and of great valour and enterprise. He considered maturely the power of the Christians, and said they were a valiant race.

Bajazet marched to raise the siege of Nicopoli in the following order. His army was drawn up in the form of a harrow, and occupied about a league of ground : in front of this main body, and a league in advance, were eight thousand Turks, to mask the body of the army, which was divided into two wings. Bajazet was in the midst of his main body, who thus quietly advanced, with their van-guard of eight thousand in front: they were thus ordered, to make an appearance as if they were the whole army, but whenever they met

the Christians, they were to fall back gently towards the main body, which was then to extend itself as much as possible, and endeavour to enclose the Christians, whom they should then conquer at pleasure. Such was the order of battle of Bajazet.

It happened, that on the Monday preceding Michaelmas-day, in the year 1396, about ten o'clock, as the king of Hungary and the lords, who were lying before Nicopoli, were seated at dinner, news was brought them that their enemies, the Turks, were near at hand; but, as I heard, the scouts did not inform them of the whole truth: they had not noticed the main body of the Turks, for the moment they saw the van-guard, they dared not advance farther, as they were not men at arms fearless of such an enterprise. The Hungarians and French had each scouts of their own, and both parties arrived nearly at the same time with this intelligence.

The greater part of the army were at dinner when the news was carried to the count de Nevers and the other French lords, the messenger bawling out, 'Come! quickly arm yourselves, that you be not surprised, for the Turks are on full march to meet you.' This information was agreeable to many who were desirous of arms: they instantly arose, pushed the tables aside, and demanded their horses and armour. They were somewhat heated with wine, and hastened to the field as well as they could. Banners and pennons were displayed, under which every one ranged himself in his proper post.

The

The banner of the Virgin Mary was unfurled, and the guard of it given to that valiant knight sir John de Vienne, admiral of France. The French were so eager to arm themselves that they were the first in the field, drawn up in handsome array, and seemingly fearless of the Turks; for they were ignorant of their immense numbers, and that Bajazet commanded in person.

As the French lords were hastening from their tents to the field, the marshal of the king of Hungary, named sir Henry d'Ostenlonthalle *, mounted on a handsome courser, came to them with few attendants. He was a valiant and experienced knight, and had borne before him a pennon of his arms, which were a cross anchored sable on a field argent, which in heraldry is called cross moline. He stopped, when opposite the banner of our Lady, where the principal lords were assembled, and said aloud,—‘ I am sent hither by my lord, the king of Hungary, who entreats you by me, that you will not begin the battle before you shall again hear from him; for he much suspects and fears that the scouts have not brought exact intelligence of the numbers of the Turks. Within two hours you shall have more certain intelligence, for we have sent other scouts, who will advance farther than the former ones, and bring us better information. Be assured the Turks will never attack you, unless you force them to it, or until they have collected all their forces together. You will act as you shall think

* MSS. Steulerhalle.

best; but such are my lord the king's orders. I must now return, for I cannot longer stay.'

On saying this, the Hungarian marshal left them, and the lords assembled together to consider what was to be done. The lord de Coucy was asked his opinion, and replied, that the king of Hungary had a right to order them, and that what he had requested was perfectly just. It was mentioned to me that the count d'Eu, constable of France, was vexed that his opinion had not been first asked before the lord de Coucy's, and, through spite and malice, instantly opposed what he had said, adding; 'Yes, yes, the king of Hungary wishes to gain all the honour of the day: he has given us the van guard, and now wants to take it away, that he may have the first blow: let those who will believe what he sends to us, for my part I never will.' Then addressing the knight who bore his banner, he said, 'In the name of God and Saint George, you shall see me this day prove myself a good knight.' The lord de Coucy thought this a very vain speech of the constable, and, turning to sir John de Vicane, who had the banner of our Lady under his guard, and by whom all the others were to tally, asked what ought to be done. 'Lord de Coucy,' he replied, 'when truth and reason are not heard, folly and presumption must reign; and, since the count d'Eu is determined to fight the enemy, we must follow him; but we should have greater advantage, if we waited the king of Hungary's orders, and were all united.'

While they thus conversed, the infidels were fast

fast approaching : the two wings of their army, which consisted of sixty thousand men each, were already closing round them. The Christians, observing this, would have retreated, but that was impossible, as they were completely surrounded. Many knights and squires, who had been used to arms, now knew the day must be lost : notwithstanding which, they advanced, following the banner of our Lady, that was borne by that gallant knight sir John de Vienne.

The lords of France were so richly dressed out, in their emblazoned surcoats, as to look like little kings ; but, as I was told, when they met the Turks, they were not more than seven hundred, which sufficiently shewed the folly of the measure ; for, had they waited for the Hungarian army, consisting of sixty thousand men, they might, perhaps, have gained a victory, but, to their pride and presumption, was the whole loss owing ; and it was so great, that never since the defeat at Roncesvalles, where the twelve peers of France were slain, did the French suffer so considerably. However, before they were overcome, they made great slaughter of the Turks ; though several knights and squires saw they were marching to destruction, through their own folly.

The French defeated the van battalion, and put it to flight, pursuing it into a valley where Bajazet was posted with the main army. The French would have returned, as they were mounted on barded horses, but could not, for they were now inclosed on all sides. The battle, therefore, raged with

with fury, and lasted a considerable time. News was carried to the king of Hungary, that the French, English and Germans were engaged with the Turks, not having obeyed his orders sent them by the marshal. He was very wroth on hearing it, as indeed he had reason to be, and foresaw they would all be cut off. He said to the grand master of Rhodes, who was beside him, ‘ We shall lose the day, from the vanity of the French : if they had believed me, and waited for our joining, we should have had sufficient strength to cope with the enemy.’

As he thus spoke, looking behind him, he perceived that his men were flying-panic-struck, and the Turks pursuing them. He then saw the day was irrecoverably lost, and those near his person cried out,—‘ Sire, save yourself! for, should you be killed or taken, Hungary will be completely ruined. We must be defeated through French pride ; and their valour will prove in vain, for every one of them will be taken or slain : not one can possibly escape. Fly, therefore, from the danger, before it be too late.’

The king of Hungary was in the utmost rage to be thus defeated through the arrogance of the French, and obliged to fly, if he would avoid captivity or death. It was a most unfortunate day for the Hungarians and French ; whoever runs away from battle is pursued, and, as the Hungarians fled in the greatest confusion, the Turks followed, killing them or making prisoners at pleasure. God, however, assisted the king of Hungary and the grand

grand master of Rhodes; for, on their arrival on the banks of the Danube, they found a small vessel belonging to the grand master, into which they entered, with only five more, and crossed to the opposite shore. Had they delayed, they must have been killed or taken; for the Turks came to the river as they were passing it, and made a great slaughter of those who had followed the king thinking to escape.

We will return to the French and Germans, who were fighting most valiantly. The lord de Montcaurel, a gallant knight from Artois, seeing the defeat inevitable, and wishing to save his son, who was very young, said to his squire,—‘ Carry off my son: thou mayest escape by that wing which is open: save my son, and I will abide the event with my companions.’ The youth, on hearing his father thus speak, declared he would not go nor leave him in such danger; but the father forced him away, and the squire brought him safely to the Danube: the youth, who was very melancholy at the situation of his father, was unfortunately drowned by falling between two barges, without a possibility of being saved. Sir William de la Trimouille and his son displayed great feats of valour before they were slain. Sir John de Vienne, who bore the banner of our Lady, in spite of his deeds of arms, was killed grasping the banner in his hands, and thus was he found after the battle. The whole of the French force that had been engaged at this battle of Nicopoli were defeated and slain, by the means I have related.

The

The lord John of Burgundy, count of Nevers, was wondrous richly arrayed, as were the lord Guy de la Riviere, and many barons and knights from Burguady in compliment to him. Two squires from Picardy, William d'Eu and the borgne de Montquel, who had displayed their courage in many former battles, did the same at Nicopoli. These two squires, by their vigorous courage, twice forced through the Turkish army, and returned to the fight, but were at length slain. To say the truth, the whole of the French chivalry and those from other countries acquitted themselves most gallantly; and, had they been assisted by the Hungarians with equal courage, the day would have turned out differently. But the whole of the mischief was caused by the French, and their presumption was their ruin. There was a knight from Picardy, called sir James de Helly, who had resided some time in Turkey, and had served in arms under Amurat, father of the sultan Bajazet, of whom we are now speaking, and who knew a little of the Turkish language. When he saw the day was lost, he thought of saving his life; and, as he knew the Saracens to be a covetous race, he surrendered himself to them, on their granting him his life. Thus did he escape, and also another squire from the Tournaisis, called James du Fay, who had formerly served Tamerlane king of Tartary; but when he learnt that the French were marching to Turkey, he quitted Tamerlane, and joined his countrymen. He was at this battle, and saved by Tamerlane's men, who had

had been ordered thither in compliance with the request made to him for assistance by Bajazet. Tamerlane had sent him a considerable body of men, as Saracen and Pagan kings always do to the aid of each other.

CHAP. XLII.

THE TURKS, AFTER THE BATTLE OF NICOPOLE
PUT TO DEATH ALL THEIR PRISONERS, EXCEPT
THE COUNT DE NEVERS AND SOME OTHER
GREAT LORDS.

AT this battle of Nicopoli, which was so fatal to the French, very many were saved, from the extreme richness of their armour : they were dressed like kings ; and the Saracens and Turks, who are avaricious, thought, by saving their lives, they should gain large ransoms ; for they believed them much greater lords, from their appearance, than they really were.

The count de Nevers was made prisoner, as were the counts d'Eu and de la Marche, the lord de Coucy, the lord Henry de Bar, sir Guy de la Trimouille, Boucicaut and others. The lord Philip de Bar, sir John de Vienne, sir William de la Trimouille and his son were killed. This battle lasted for three hours ; and the king of Hungary

gary lost his whole baggage, his gold and silver plate, jewels, and every thing else. He had escaped by fortunately finding a vessel from Rhodes on the Danube, that had brought provisions, in which he had crossed the river with six others: had he not done so, he must have been slain or taken. There were more killed in the pursuit than in the battle, and numbers were drowned. Happy was he who could escape from such danger by any means.

When the business was over, and the Turks, Persians and others sent thither by different infidel kings, had retired to their lodgings, (that is to say, to the tents and pavilions they had conquered from the Christians, in which they found wines, meats and every other necessary) they enjoyed themselves, and made merry, like men who have gained a victory over their enemies.

Bajazet dismounted, at the sound of many minstrels, according to their custom, at the principal tent that had belonged to the king of Hungary, which was very large, and richly adorned. Bajazet took pleasure in viewing it, and glorified himself internally for the victory he had obtained over the Christians, and thanked his God for it, according to the manner of their religion. When he was disarmed, to cool and refresh himself, he sat on a silken carpet in the middle of the tent, and sent for his principal friends, to chat and joke with them. He began the conversation, by saying he would now march a great force into Hungary, to conquer that country and the rest of Christendom, which

which he would put under his obedience, but that each kingdom might follow its own religion and laws, owning him for their lord : that he would reign like Alexander of Macedon, who for twelve years governed the whole world, as he was descended from his blood.

All assented to what Bajazet said, and agreed to his proposal. He gave out three orders : the first, that every one who had made prisoners should produce them before him the next day ; the second, that the dead should be carefully examined, and the nobles and great lords be set apart, and left untouched until he had seen them ; the third, that exact inquiries should be made among the slain and prisoners after the king of Hungary, that he might know whether he was dead or alive. These orders were fulfilled, for none dared disobey them.

When Bajazet had refreshed himself, and changed his dress, he resolved to visit the dead on the field of battle ; for he had been told the victory had cost him dear, and that he had lost great numbers of men. He was much surprised to hear this, and would not believe it. He mounted his horse, attended by his vizier, nobles and bashaws : some said his principal officers were his brothers, whom he would not acknowledge as such, declaring he had no brothers. On his coming to the field of battle, he found what had been told him was true ; for where one Christian lay dead there were thirty of their enemies. The sight vexed him much, and he said aloud.—‘ This has been

been a cruel battle for our people : the Christians have defended themselves desperately ; but I will have this slaughter well revenged on those who are prisoners.'

He now left the field and returned to his tent, comforting himself for the loss he had suffered by the victory and defeat of the Christians ; but, notwithstanding this, he passed the night in great fury. On the morrow, before he was risen or had shewn himself, great numbers came before his tent, to learn his will respecting the prisoners ; for it had been rumoured that he intended having them all put to death without mercy. Bajazet, however, in spite of his rage against the Christians, had given orders that all the principal lords who had been made prisoners should be separated from the others, for he had been told they would pay him large ransoms, and on that account he was inclined to spare them. He had also learnt that many of the Tartars, Arabs, Bedouins and Syrians, had made prisoners, from whom they expected to gain large fortunes, as indeed they did, by concealing their prisoners from Bajazet. Sir James de Helly, whom I mentioned before, was, luckily for him, brought this Tuesday morning before the tent of the sultan, with many other prisoners, for he who had taken him was afraid of keeping him hid. As they were waiting the coming of Bajazet, some of the knights of his household, standing round the tent, recollecting sir James, and delivered him from the hands of those who had taken him. He remained with the attendants of the sultan, who had been

been formerly acquainted with him; and fortunate it was for him, as you will hear related, for to the greater part of the Christians it was a disastrous day.

Before Bajazet appeared, inquiries had been made who were the greatest lords among the prisoners, and his interpreters had been very strict in their examinations, putting such aside not to be killed. The first was John of Burgundy commander in chief, then the count d'Eu, the count de la Marche, the lord de Coucy, lord Henry de Bar, sir Guy de la Trimouille, and two more, amounting in all to eight. Bajazet would see and talk with them. He eyed them long in silence, and these lords were conjured on their faith to avow if they were the persons who had been so named. He also resolved to send for sir James de Helly, that he might assure him of the truth. On his coming, he was remembered by the sultan, whom he had served, and was now perfectly secure from danger. He was asked if he knew those French lords who were prisoners at the bottom of the tent. ‘I cannot say,’ he replied; ‘but, if I saw their faces, I should know them all.’ He was then ordered to go near and examine them, and report truly their names to the sultan, for that his determination would be according to what he should say. He went near the prisoners, and, bowing to them, knew them all. He told them his fortunate escape, and that he had been sent by the sultan to see if they were the persons answering to the names they had given themselves.

* Ah, sir James,' said they, ' you are well acquainted with us all: you see how fortune has turned against us, and what great danger we are in when we depend on the mercy of this sultan. If it may any how save our lives, tell him we are of even greater rank than we have said, and able to pay him large sums for our ransoms.' ' My lords,' replied sir James, ' this I will most cheerfully do, for it is my duty.'

The knight then returned to Bajazet, and said, ' those lords who are prisoners, and with whom he had been talking, are of the noblest blood in France, nearly related to the king, and willing to pay for their liberty a great sum of money.' This answer was very agreeable to the sultan, who would not listen to more, but said, ' Let those alone be spared, and all the other prisoners put to death, to free the country from them, and that others may take example from their fate.'

The sultan now made his appearance to his people before the tent, who, bowing down, made him their obeisance. The army was drawn up in two wings on each side; the sultan with his nobles, the count de Nevers and those who were to be spared, were in the center; for he would they should witness the execution of their companions, which the Saracens were eager to perform. Many excellent knights and squires of France and other nations, who had been taken in battle or in the pursuit, were now brought forth in their shirts, one after another, before Bajazet, who eying them a little, they were led on; and,

as he made a signal, were instantly cut to pieces by those waiting for them with drawn swords. Such was the cruel justice of Bajazet this day, when upwards of three hundred gentlemen of different nations were thus pitilessly murdered. It was a cruel case for them to suffer for the love of our Saviour JESUS CHRIST, and may he receive their souls !

Among the murdered of that day was the gallant knight sir Henry d'Antoing : may God shew gracious mercy to his soul ! The lord Boucicaut, marshal of France, was led naked, like the others, before Bajazet, and would have suffered the same cruel death, had not the count de Nevers left his companions, who were motionless at the sad sight, and flung himself on his knees to the sultan, entreating him to spare the lord Boucicaut, who was much beloved by the king of France, and well able to pay a considerable ransom ; and the count made signs, as paying from one hand to the other, that he would give a large sum of money, to soften the anger of the sultan. Bajazet consented to the request of the count de Nevers, and the lord Boucicaut was put aside with those who were not to be killed. Others were brought forward, until the number I have mentioned was completed ; such was the cruel revenge the infidels had on the Christians.

It seems, according to what I heard, that Bajazet took delight that the victory he had gained over the Christians, and the capture of the count

de Nevers, should be known in France, and carried thither by a French knight. Three knights, of whom sir James de Helly was one, were brought before Bajazet and the count de Nevers, who was asked which of the three he wished should go to the king of France and to his father the duke of Burgundy. Sir James de Helly had the good fortune to be made choice of, because the count de Nevers was before acquainted with him : he therefore said to the sultan,—“ Sir, I wish that this person may go to France from you and from me.” This was accepted by Bajazet, and sir James de Helly remained with him and the other French lords ; but the two unsuccessful knights were delivered over to the soldiery, who massacred them without pity.

After all these things were done, every thing was quiet. Bajazet, having learnt that the king of Hungary was escaped, resolved to march more into the interior of Turkey towards the city of Bursa, whither he would carry his prisoners, for he had done enough this campaign. He therefore disbanded his army, more especially that part of it which had come from distant countries. Thus was it done, and the army broke up, which had been composed of men from Tartary, Persia, Media, Syria, Alexandria and Egypt, and from other distant countries of infidels.

Bajazet gave particular orders to sir James de Helly, that when he went to France, he should take his road through Lombardy, and salute from him the duke of Milan ; and it was the sultan’s intention

intention that sir James should publish wherever he passed the great victory he had gained over the Christians. The count de Nevers wrote by him, as well for himself as for his fellow-prisoners, to the king of France, and to the duke and duchess of Burgundy. On receiving these letters and other verbal messages, the knight departed from the sultan and the lords of France; but, before he set out, Bajazet made him promise, on oath, that as soon as he should have performed the journey, and delivered all he had been charged with to the king of France and the other lords, he would return, which the knight swore he would do, and kept his oath.

We will now leave Bajazet, and the French lords who remained prisoners during his pleasure, and speak of other things.

CHAP. XLIII.

THE FRENCH AND OTHERS WHO HAD BEEN IN TURKEY SUFFER GREAT HARDSHIPS ON THEIR RETURN HOME, AFTER HAVING ESCAPED FROM THE BATTLE OF NICOPOLI.—SIR JAMES DE HELLY BRINGS CERTAIN INTELLIGENCE OF THIS DEFEAT TO THE KING OF FRANCE.

AFTER this memorable victory which the Turks and their allies gained over the Christians, as has been related in this history, such knights as could escape saved themselves. On the Monday morning, the day of the battle, more than three hundred knights and squires, being out foraging, were not present at it. When they heard from the runaways that a defeat was inevitable, they gave over all thoughts of returning to their camp, but took different roads to make their escape from Turkey as speedily as they could. French, Germans, and others, made for a country adjoining to Hungary, called Wallachia, which is well inhabited, and had been conquered from the Turks, and turned by force to the Christian faith.

The guards of the passes and castles in Wallachia, allowed the Christians who came from Turkey free entrance, and gave them lodging; but, on the morrow, when they were about to depart, they took from the knights their armour and all they had, and gave them in return a miserable

ferable jacket, and some little money, just enough to bear the day's expenses. This favour was only shewn to gentlemen; for those who were not of that rank were stripped naked, and scourged villainously with rods. The French and their companions suffered most exceedingly in poverty and distress, during their passage through Wallachia and Hungary; and with difficulty could they meet with any, who, for the love of God, would give a morsel of bread, or lodge them for the night.

They endured this misery until they came to Vienna in Austria, where they were kindly received by the good people, who clothed such as were naked, and shared with them their food. They were treated with the same kindness in Bohemia: had they found the Germans as hard-hearted as the Hungarians, they would never have been able to have returned home, but must have perished with cold and hunger on the road.

Thus, wherever they came, whether alone or in companies, they brought most melancholy news, which excited pity for them in every breast that heard their sad tale.

Those of the French nation, who had fled from Turkey, arrived at last at Paris, and told the melancholy event of the battle at Nicopolis; but they were not believed nor listened to; the Parisians said it was a pity that such rascally liars were not hanged or drowned, for daily spreading abroad so many falsehoods. This news was, however, confirmed by others who arrived after them, and told the same tale, some one way, and others differently,

rently, but all agreeing as to the complete overthrow of the Hungarians and their allies.

The king of France was very much vexed on hearing such melancholy news talked of, for there were too many of his relations implicated in the loss, besides other excellent knights and squires of France. He therefore forbade any thing to be said on the subject, until he should receive more positive information, to confirm the truth or falsehood of these reports ; and those who had divulged such news, saying they were come from Turkey and Hungary, were arrested, and confined in the Châtelet of Paris. They consisted of great numbers, and were told, that if what they had said should be found false, orders had been given for all of them to be drowned ; for the king was very wroth they should have published such disastrous news.

It happened that, on Christmas-day about noon, sir James de Helly arrived in Paris, and the moment he had dismounted at his inn, he inquired where the king was. They told him at the hôtel de Saint Pol, on the banks of the Seine, whither he went. There was with the king this day, as is usual on such solemn festivals, the duke of Orleans, the dukes of Berry, Burgundy, and Bourbon, the count de Saint Pol, and many of the nobility. Sir James de Helly entered the hôtel in the same dress he had rode in, booted and spurred, so that he was not known ; for he had, for a long time, been seeking adventures in foreign parts, in preference to living with his relations and friends. By fair speeches he got at last to the king's apartment,

ment, and made himself known, saying he was come immediately from Bajazet and Turkey, and that he had been present at the battle of Nicopoli where the Christians had lost the day; and that he had brought certain intelligence from the count de Nevers, and from the other French lords with whom he had marched through Hungary. The knights of the king's chamber were pleased to hear this; for they knew the king, the duke of Burgundy, and many lords, were very anxious to learn true intelligence from those countries. They therefore made way for him to approach the king: when near, he fell on his knees, as was right, and told all he had been charged with, as well by Bajazet, as by the count de Nevers and the French lords his fellow-prisoners. The king and lords listened attentively to all he said, for they believed he was speaking the truth. Many questions were asked, in order to hear a more detailed account, to all of which he answered very pertinently, and to the satisfaction of the king, who was greatly affected at the loss the king of Hungary and his chivalry had suffered. He was somewhat comforted that the king of Hungary had escaped death and prison; for he supposed that he would renew the war against Turkey with vigour, and have ample revenge on Bajazet.

The king of France and his lords were rejoiced that the count de Nevers and his few companions were free from danger of being murdered; and, as they were now prisoners, the lords debated on the

the means of paying their ransom. Sir James de Helly said that he hoped Bajazet would, within a year or two, sell them their liberty, for he was very avaricious: This he personally knew, having resided a long time in Turkey, and for three years served Amurat, father to the present sultan.

The king made the knight rise, and treated him kindly, as did the lords present. They said, he had been very fortunate to have had a friend in so great a monarch as this infidel Bajazet, after such a severe battle, and to be sent by him with his message to the king of France. He and his family ought to pride themselves on such good fortune. The king ordered all who had been confined in the Châtelet, for having first spread abroad this intelligence, to be set at liberty. They were happy to hear this, for many of them had repented they had talked so much.

CHAP. XLIV.

SIR JAMES DE HELLY, HAVING RECEIVED HIS DISPATCHES FROM THE KING OF FRANCE, ARRIVES IN HUNGARY, IN HIS WAY TO TURKEY.—THE KING SENDS SIR JOHN DE CHASTELMORANT, WITH PRESENTS TO BAJAZET, AND HIS RECOMMENDATIONS IN FAVOUR OF THE FRENCH PRISONERS.—THE MANNER IN WHICH THEY ARE TREATED.

WHEN the intelligence sir James de Helly had brought was made public, all who had lost husband, brother, father or child, were in the utmost consternation, as may easily be supposed. The high nobility of France, such as the duchess of Burgundy and the lady Margaret of Hainault, were great afflicted on account of their son and husband the count de Nevers, for he was much beloved by them. The countess of Eu lamented her lord the constable, as did the counts de la Marche: the ladies of Coucy, of Bar, and Sully, in like manner bewailed the melancholy situation of their lords. They were fortunate in having only their lords' captivity to lament, and were somewhat comforted thereat; but the relations and friends of those who had been massacred were inconsolable, and the grief of France lasted a long time.

The duke of Burgundy treated most kindly sir James

James de Helly for having brought him intelligence of his son : he made him many rich gifts, and retained him for one of his knights, with a pension of two hundred livres a-year during his life. The king of France also, and the lords of the court, gave him handsome presents. He informed them he was bound to return to Bajazet, after he should have delivered his letters, as the sultan's prisoner ; for he was sent solely with a view to publish Bajazet's victory, and to say what lords had perished or been made prisoners at the battle of Nicopoli. This seemed reasonable, and the king, the duke of Burgundy, and such lords as were at Paris, prepared to write to their friends and relations who were prisoners,

It was determined in council, that the king should send some knight of renown, prudence and valour to Bajazet, who, having delivered his message, was to return with more detailed accounts of the state of the prisoners, in case sir James de Helly were not permitted so to do by the sultan, whose prisoner he was. Sir John de Châteaumorant was selected for this embassy, as being every way qualified for it.

Sir James de Helly was asked what jewels or presents would be most acceptable to the sultan, that the count de Nevers and the other prisoners might fare the better. The knight said, that Bajazet took great pleasure in viewing fine tapestry from Arras or Picardy, which represented ancient histories : he was also fond of gervalcons : but he thought that fine linen from Rheims, and scarlet cloths

cloths, would be most acceptable to the sultan and his lords. There was plenty of cloths of gold and silks in Turkey, with which they were amply provided, and consequently would like things they could not get at home. The king and the duke of Burgundy, therefore, resolved what to send, for they were anxious to please Bajazet on account of the count of Nevers.

Sir James de Helly remained at Paris, with the king and lords, about twelve days, and was well listened to by all; for he entertained them with his adventures in Hungary and Turkey, and with descriptions of the manners of Bajazet. On his departure, he was told,—‘Sir James, you may now set out on your return to the sultan, at your leisure. We suppose you will go through Lombardy, to the duke of Milan; for he and Bajazet are great friends, although they have never seen each other: but, whatever road you take, we entreat and order you to wait in Hungary for sir John de Châteaumorant, who will be sent by the king with presents to the sultan, as it is our intent that he pursue his journey from Hungary in your company to Turkey, or until you shall meet the sultan, that he may behave the more kindly to the count de Nevers and his fellow-prisoners, who are now in his power.’

Sir James promised obedience, and, having received his dispatches, took leave of the king, the duke of Burgundy, and the other lords, and left Paris, following the same road by which he had come. He continued his journey, firmly resolved

never

never to return to France until he had obtained his liberty. After his departure, the duke of Burgundy was constantly employed in preparing the presents for the sultan; and, by the time they were provided, sir John de Châteaumorant was ready to set out, for he had begun his preparations for the journey on his being first nominated to go thither. They made great haste to have the presents from the king to Bajazet in time for sir John de Châteaumorant to overtake sir James de Helly. These presents consisted of pieces of the best-worked tapestry from Arras, representing the history of Alexander the Great and his conquests, which was a delightful sight for all men of honour, the finest linens from Rheims, and scarlet and crimson cloths, which were packed on six sumpter-horses.

All these things were easily to be had for money; but there was great difficulty in procuring white gersfalcons. At last, however, they were got, either in Paris or from Germany; and sir John de Châteaumorant, having received his final instructions, left Paris, and began his journey fifteen days after sir James de Helly.

In the interval during which these knights were on their journey, the king of Hungary returned to his kingdom. On his arrival being known, his subjects were greatly rejoiced, and flocked to him, for he was much beloved. They comforted him by saying, that if in this campaign he had been unfortunate, in another he would be more successful.

cessful. The king bore his misfortunes as well as he could.

Immediately after the battle, Bajazet disbanded his army and marched to the city of Bursa, carrying with him his prisoners. They were put under strict confinement, and very little comfort allowed them. They suffered much from the change of diet, as they had always been accustomed to have their own cooks, and their tables served with every delicacy; but of all this they were deprived, and forced to live on coarse meat, and that badly, or not thoroughly dressed. They had plenty of spices, and millet bread, which is disagreeable to a French palate. They had great difficulty in procuring wine: although they were great princes, there was not any attention paid them, for the Turks were indifferent whether they were sick or in health; and, if the advice of several had been adopted, they would all have been put to death.

These lords of France comforted each other, and thankfully received whatever was given them, for they could no way better themselves. At the beginning of their captivity, several of them were very unwell: the count de Nevers bore his misfortune the best, and kept up his spirits to comfort the others. He was assisted in this by the lord Boucicaut, the count de la Marche and lord Henry de Bar, who said, that the honours and glories of arms could not be gained without meeting with unfortunate reverses; and that no man, however valiant or lucky, or accustomed to war, had every thing according to his wish; and that they ought

to

to thank God for having had their lives saved from the furious rage of Bajazet and his followers, for it had been determined by the army to put every one to death. Boucicaut said,—‘ I ought to be more thankful than any one to God for my life being spared, for I was brought out to be massacred as my companions had been, and should have lost my head, had not my lord of Nevers cast himself on his knees to Bajazet, who, at his request, granted me his pardon. I hold this a most fortunate escape ; and since it was the good pleasure of our lord that I should live, I have no doubt but that God, who has delivered us from this peril, will continue his mercy to us, for we are his soldiers ; and that we shall soon obtain our liberty, for we are now suffering in his cause. Beside, sir James de Helly is on his road to France, who will relate to the king and barons our distress ; and I expect, within the year, we shall receive comfort and our liberty. Things will not remain long as they are. There is much good sense in the king and the duke of Burgundy, who will never forget us ; and, by some means or other, we shall receive sufficient sums for our ransomis.’

Thus the gallant knight, the lord Boucicaut, comforted himself, and bore his captivity with patience, as did likewise the young count de Nevers ; but the lord de Coucy was sorely afflicted, which is not to be wondered at. Before this event, he had been a lord of such high spirit as nothing could cast down : this captivity in Turkey, however, preyed on his mind more than it did on the spirits of the

the others, and he became quite melancholy. He complained of great oppression at his heart, and said he should never return to France ; that he had escaped many perils and dangerous adventures, but this would be his last. The lord Henry de Bar consoled him, and blamed him for being so disconsolate without cause ; and told him it was folly to be thus cast down, when he ought to find more satisfaction in his own mind than any other. Notwithstanding the advice he was giving, he himself severely felt his own situation, and bitterly regretted his wife. The count d'Eu, constable of France, suffered from similar regrets. Sir Guy de la Trémouille and the count de la Marche kept up their spirits very tolerably. Bajazet was desirous they should have some amusements in their captivity, and at times visited and conversed with them most graciously : he was likewise anxious they should witness his state and power.

We will now leave them, and return to sir James de Helly and sir John de Châteaumorant, who were both journeying towards Hungary.

CHAP. XLV.

SIR JAMES DE HELLY, ON HIS RETURN TO TURKEY, OBTAINS HIS LIBERTY, AND CARRIES A PASSPORT FROM THE SULTAN TO SIR JOHN DE CHASTELMORANT IN HUNGARY.—SIR JOHN DE CHASTELMORANT IS FORCED TO SEND A MESSENGER TO THE KING OF FRANCE, TO INFORM HIM THAT THE KING OF HUNGARY WILL NOT ALLOW THE PRESENTS TO BE CARRIED TO THE SULTAN.

SIR James de Helly waited about ten or twelve days at Buda, in Hungary, for sir John de Châteaumorant, who was continuing his road as expeditiously as he could. Sir James was rejoiced on his arrival; for he was impatient to return to Turkey to acquit himself of his promise, and to see and bring comfort to the count de Nevers and the other French lords who were prisoners.

The king of Hungary made sir John de Châteaumorant a kind welcome, in compliment to the king of France and his royal cousins. He learnt from his people that the knight was carrying magnificent presents, and rich jewels, to the sultan: this vexed him greatly, but he prudently dissembled any knowledge of it until sir James de Helly should have set out for Turkey. He declared, however, to his confidential friends, that that recreant dog, Bajazet, should never receive any presents

sents from France or elsewhere, if he had the power to prevent it. When sir James had refreshed himself some time at Buda, he took leave of the king and of Châteaumorant, to continue his journey to Turkey, that he might obtain from the sultan a passport for sir John to pursue his road to him. When sir James mentioned it, the king of Hungary replied he would do well. On this the knight, having procured guides, was conducted by them through Hungary and Wallachia to Bursa, but did not find there Bajazet, who was gone to another town in Turkey called Poly*. Wherever he went he carried the prisoners with him, excepting the lord de Coucy, who was left at Bursa, unable to ride from sickness. There tarried with him his cousin, a valiant baron from Greece, and a descendant of the dukes of Austria, called the lord de Mathelin.

Sir James de Helly continued his journey to Poly, where he met Bajazet, who was glad to see him return from France, and keep his word. Sir James humbled himself much before him, and said, ‘ Most dear and redoubted lord, here is your prisoner, who has delivered, to the best of his abilities, the message you have charged him with.’ Bajazet replied, ‘ Thou art welcome, for thou hast loyally acquitted thyself; and, in consideration of it, I now give thee thy liberty.’

Sir James thanked him respectfully for this favour, and told him that the king of France, and

* Poly. Q. Constantinople.

the duke of Burgundy, father to the count de Nevers his prisoner, had sent him an honourable knight, with credential letters as ambassador, and likewise with such grand presents as he was sure would give him delight. The sultan asked if he had seen them. He replied, ‘ I have not; but the knight charged with the commission has brought them as far as Hungary, and is now at Buda waiting my return, with passports for him to continue his journey: I came to announce this news to you, and to solicit passports, if it be agreeable to you to receive him.’ ‘ We are very willing he should have passports, and you may have them made out in any form you choose.’

The knight thanked him for his gracious answer, when the sultan left him to attend to other affairs. About an hour afterward, sir James requested the sultan’s permission to visit and converse with the French prisoners, as he had much to say to them from their friends and relations. Bajazet was some time silent before he gave him an answer, when he said, ‘ Thou shalt see one of them, but not more.’ He then made a sign to his attendants for the count de Nevers to be brought to converse with sir James for a short space, and then to be carried back to his prison.

The order was instantly obeyed; and the count de Nevers saw sir James de Helly with great joy. He made many inquiries after the king of France, the duke and duchess of Burgundy, and what was passing in that country. The knight related to him every thing he had seen or heard, and deli-
yered

vered him all the messages he had been charged with; but they were greatly interrupted by the officers of the sultan, who pressed them to finish their conversation, as they had other business to attend to.

Sir James asked the count if all the other French lords were in good health. He replied,—‘ All except the lord de Coucy, who has remained sick at Bursa; and this favour, I understand, has been granted through the credit of the lord de Mathelin, who has pledged himself for him, and is much esteemed by the sultan.’ Sir James then told him that the king and the duke of Burgundy had sent sir John Châteaumorant as ambassador to Bajazet, with most magnificent presents to soften the sultan’s anger; but that sir John had stopped at Buda in Hungary until he should return with a passport for him and his attendants; that the sultan had promised the passport, with which he intended returning to Buda in a very few days:

The count de Nevers was exceedingly rejoiced on hearing this; but he dared not give way to his feelings, for the Turks were observing them. The last words the count said to him were,—‘ Sir James, I understand that Bajazet has given you your liberty, and that you may return to France when you please. On your arrival there, tell my lord and father from me, that if he have any intention to ransom me and my companions he must not delay to negotiate through the means of Venetian or Genoese merchants, and close with the first offer the sultan, or his ministers for him, may

make ; for we are lost for ever, if it be longer neglected: But I understand that the sultan is very loyal and courteous in his character, when applied to properly.'

Thus ended their interview, and the count de Nevers was conducted back to prison. Sir James de Helly hastened the passport which had been promised him. When it had been drawn out in the usual form, and sealed by Bajazet, it was delivered to the knight, who took leave of the sultan and his court, and set off on his return to Buda. He instantly waited on sir John de Châteaumorant, who was impatiently expecting him, and said,—

' I bring you a passport for yourself and your attendants, to go and return in safety from Turkey, which the sultan readily granted me.'

' That is well done,' replied sir John : ' let us go to the king of Hungary, and tell him the news. To-morrow morning, I will begin my journey, for I have staid here long enough.'

They went to the king's chamber, and related to him all you have just heard: The king replied, —' Châteaumorant and Helly, I am glad to see you both, as well on your own account as for the affection I bear to the king and my cousins of France, and I shall at all times be happy to serve you. You may travel through any part of my kingdom, unmolested, or even into Turkey, if it be your pleasure; but with regard to your carrying any rich presents or jewels to the sultan, which you, Châteaumorant, are charged with from France, I will never consent that they pass through my

my kingdom, to be offered to the infidel Bajazet, for he shall never be enriched by them. I should be extremely blamed and laughed at, if in future times he be enabled to boast, that to gain his love, and from fear, because he has gained a victory over me, and detains some great barons of France prisoners, the king of France and his princes have sent him rich presents. In respect to the gersfalcons, I am indifferent whether he have them or not; for birds fly any where, and are as soon lost as given; but with respect to fine tapestry, which would remain as a proof of his boastings being true, I will not consent that he enjoy the pleasure of possessing it. Therefore, Châteaumorant, continued the king of Hungary, ‘if you wish to make a journey into Turkey, to see Bajazet, and present him with the falcons, you may do so, but you shall not carry him any thing else.’

‘ Sir John de Châteaumorant replied,—‘ Certainly, sire, it is not the intention of the king of France, nor to his honour more than to that of the other lords who have sent me, that I fail in any particular in the accomplishment of the objects they have charged me with.’

‘ Very well,’ said the king: ‘ you will not at present have any other answer from me than what you have heard.’

The two knights left the apartment, and consulted together how to act, for this refusal of the king of Hungary had disconcerted them. They thought their only expedient was to send off a

messenger express with the account of the king of Hungary's conduct to the king of France and the duke of Burgundy, for them to provide a remedy, and to explain the causes of their delay. They wrote, in consequence, letters to the king and the duke of Burgundy, and engaged a trusty messenger to carry them, whom they supplied with a sufficiency of money for him frequently to change his horses on the road, that he might hasten his journey, while they waited his return at Buda.

The messenger journeyed with great diligence to Paris, and delivered his letters to the king of France and the duke of Burgundy. Having read them, they were much surprised and vexed that the king of Hungary should prevent their ambassador from continuing his journey with the presents to the sultan of Turkey, as they had ordered him to do. The duke of Berry, however, excused the king of Hungary, saying he was no way to blame, for it was too debasing to a king of France to send presents and jewels to such a recreant pagan king. The duke of Burgundy was more nearly affected in the matter, and defended the measure as reasonable, since fortune had been so favourable, to give the sultan a victory, in which the whole force of the king of Hungary was slain or put to flight, and the greater part of the nobles made prisoners that had been in the battle. It therefore behoved their relations and friends to adopt every mode for their deliverance, if they were desirous of seeing them again.

This

This speech of the duke of Burgundy was supported by the king and council. The king asked the duke of Berry,—‘ Good uncle, if this sultan Bajazet, or any other pagan king, were to send you a rich and sparkling ruby, would you accept of it?’ ‘ My lord,’ replied the duke, ‘ I should consider of it.’ The king reminded him that it was not ten years since the sultan had sent him a ruby that had cost twenty thousand francs.

The king of Hungary was condemned by all for having prevented the presents from being carried to the sultan, which might have the effect of adding to the distressful state of the French lords that were prisoners. The king was therefore advised to write courteous letters to the king of Hungary, to request that he would no longer prevent his ambassador from proceeding on his journey with the presents to the court of Turkey. When they had been fairly written out and sealed, they were given to the messenger from Hungary, who, leaving Paris, set out on his return to Buda.

CHAP. XLVI.

THE DUCHESS OF ORLEANS IS SUSPECTED OF
CAUSING THE KING'S ILLNESS.

EVERY year the king of France had relapses of his frenzy, without any physician or surgeon being able to prevent it. Some indeed had boasted that they would restore him to sound health, but it was soon found they laboured in vain. The king's disorder never ceased until it had run its course, in spite of prayers and medicines. Some of the physicians and sorcerers who attended the king, on finding their labour lost, declared the king must have been poisoned or enchanted by some pernicious herbs. This agitated greatly the minds of the nobility and people, for these sorcerers affirmed, the better to gain belief, that the king was under the power of sorcery, and that they knew it from the devil who had revealed it to them. Several of these conjurors had been burnt at Paris and Avignon, for having gone so far to say that the duchess of Orleans, daughter to the duke of Milan, was the cause of this mischief, that she might succeed to the crown of France. This was so much believed that common report said she had frequently practised such arts, and that, so long as she was near the person of the king, he neither would nor could regain his health.

It

It was therefore necessary, to put an end to this flander, that the duchess of Orleans should quit Paris. She went first to reside at Asnieres, a very handsome castle near Pontoise, that belonged to the duke her lord, and then to Neufchâteau, on the Loire, which also belonged to him. The duke of Orleans was very melancholy on hearing such injurious reports against his duchess, which he dissembled as well as he could, and never on this account quitted the king or court, for he took pleasure in attending public business and the different councils on the affairs of the realm.

Galeas duke of Milan was duly informed of the infamous crimes his daughter, the duchess of Orleans, was accused of. He deeply felt the injury, and had twice or thrice sent ambassadors to France, to exculpate his daughter to the king of France and his council, offering, at the same time, a knight or knights that should engage in mortal combat any person who should dare to accuse his daughter of such iniquitous and treasonable practices. The duke of Milan threatened to make war on France; for he had learnt that the king, when he gave his daughter in marriage to the king of England, between Ardres and Calais, had declared, that on his return to Paris, he would not attend to any thing until he should march a large army into the Milanese; and that his son-in-law, king Richard, had, to his great satisfaction, offered him one thousand English spears and six thousand archers. Galeas had likewise heard that purveyances were making throughout

throughout Dauphiny and Savoy for the king of France, for it was by Piedmont he intended entering Lombardy.

This expedition, however, was laid aside, and no more thought of, when the news arrived of the unfortunate issue of the battle of Nicopoli, and the death and captivity of the French nobles. The king and the duke of Burgundy were so afflicted at this event, that they could not attend to any thing else : they besides knew that the duke of Milan was on the most friendly terms with Bajazet, which was an additional reason at this moment not to push any hostile attempts against him, and he was left unmolested.

CHAP. XLVII.

THE DUKE AND DUCHESS OF BURGUNDY DILIGENTLY EXERT THEMSELVES TO FIND MEANS TO RANSOM THE COUNT DE NEVERS, THEIR SON, AND HIS FELLOW-PRISONERS IN TURKEY.—THE KING OF HUNGARY, THROUGH THE PERSUASION OF THE GRAND MASTER OF RHODES, PERMITS THE AMBASSADOR FROM THE KING OF FRANCE TO PASS THROUGH HIS KINGDOM WITH THE PRESENTS FOR THE SULTAN BAJAZET.

THE duke and duchess of Burgundy considered every possible means of recovering their son. As they knew they must pay a very large sum for his ransom, they reduced their expenses as much as possible, to gather all the money they could ; without this, they knew they could not succeed ; and made many friends among the Venetian and Genoese merchants, for through their means the ransoms were to be negotiated.

The duke of Burgundy resided with the king, who conversed with him frequently on affairs of state, and paid attention to what he said ; for the duke had the principal share in the government, which made his own affairs prosper the more.

At this time there lived in Paris a Lombard, who was a great and rich merchant, and transacted business for the other Lombards : he was known and

and spoken of all over the world, wherever commerce was carried on: his name was Dinde Desponde, and by him all exchanges were made. If before the event of the battle of Nicopoli he was beloved by the king of France and the lords of his court, he was now much more so, and had frequent consultations with the duke of Burgundy on the surest means to recover his son and the other lords who were prisoners in Turkey.

Dinde Desponde said to the duke,—‘ My lord, by degrees all things are brought about. The merchants of Genoa, and of the islands under their obedience, are well known every where, and traffic with Cairo, Alexandria, Damascus, Damietta and Turkey, and in different countries of infidels; for trade, my lord, as you know, finds its way every where, and rules the world. Write, therefore, to the Genoese, and prevail on the king to do so likewise, in a friendly manner, promising them great rewards if they will undertake the business; for there is nothing but may be accomplished with money. The king of Cyprus, who is near to Turkey, and now at peace with the sultan, may also assist in the matter. You must suppose that, as for myself, I will exert my powers to the utmost, for I am bound to obey you in every thing.’

The duke and duchess of Burgundy neglected no means to free their son from his captivity, for they were sorely afflicted by it. He was the heir to their vast possessions; and this misfortune had happened to him on his first onset in arms. The ladies of France lamented the loss of their husbands

bands and friends, especially the lady of Coucy, who refused all comfort, and bewailed him day and night. The duke of Lorraine and sir Ferri de Lorraine, her brothers, visited her at Saint Gobin*, where she resided, and consoled her as well as they could. They advised her to send into Turkey to gain some intelligence of him, for they had heard he had greater liberty allowed him than the other prisoners.

The lady thanked her brothers for this advice, and instantly sent for sir Robert Desnet, a good and valiant knight of the Cambresis. She entreated him so sweetly, urging him, out of affection to her, to undertake a journey into Turkey, that the knight consented, and engaged to go thither and bring back full intelligence of the lord de Coucy.

Sir Robert soon made his preparations, and, accompanied by four others, set out for Hungary. In like manner did other ladies in France send to inquire after their husbands.

The king of Hungary was very obstinate in his refusal to allow sir John de Châteaumorant to continue his journey to Turkey with the presents from the king of France to the sultan. Though this greatly displeased sir John and sir James de Helly, they could not prevail on him to alter his resolution. It happened that the grand master of

* Saint Gobin,—near la Fere in Picardy, now famous for its fine manufactory of looking glasses.

† Sir Robert Desne. Sir Robert de Seu, MSS. B. M. and Hafod.

Rhodes came at this time to Buda. He was most kindly received by the king, as indeed he ought to have been, for, on the day of the battle, he had saved the king from death or captivity. He made acquaintance with the two knights from France, who related to him the conduct of the king of Hungary, and the circumstance of his detaining them at Buda. He was much surprised, and said, to soften their anger, he would speak to the king on the subject, and, as they should soon experience, with good effect. He managed the matter so prudently with the king, that they were permitted to continue their journey to Turkey, with all their presents, which were restored to them. The ambassador arrived in safety at the place where Bajazet resided, owing to the passports sir James de Helly had brought him. The sultan received the knights, and their presents from the king of France, with much respect, and seemed very proud of what the king had sent him.

The knights were only permitted to have one interview with the count de Nevers, but with none of the others: this, however, was of a sufficiently long continuance. On their taking leave, the count said,—‘Recommend me to my lord and father, the duke of Burgundy, to my lady-mother, to my lord the king, and to my lord of Berry, and salute in my name all my friends. Should there be any negotiation going forward with Bajazet, urge the speedy conclusion, for we suffer from every delay. We were originally eight prisoners, but are now increased, by sixteen more,

twenty-four * : let the ransom include all of us, for it will be as readily agreed to for the whole as for one. Bajazet has settled this in his own mind, and you may depend on his steadiness ; and those who have sent you hither may rely on his word, for it is inviolable.' Sir James de Helly and sir John de Châteaumorant replied, they would say and do every thing he had directed. They then took leave of the count de Nevers, and the sultan, and set out for Hungary and France. On their return, they met the messenger whom they had sent to Paris, as has been mentioned, bringing letters to the king of Hungary. They made him come back with them, as he had now no occasion to proceed further, for they had been in Turkey ; and they all returned together, to the king of France at Paris.

* The MSS. say *nine* original prisoners.

CHAP. XLVIII.

THE DUKE OF GLOCESTER PLOTS THE DESTRUCTION OF HIS NEPHEW, THE KING OF ENGLAND.—THE KING, HAVING INFORMATION OF HIS PRACTICES, HAS HIM ARRESTED BY THE EARL MARSHAL.

I HAVE been some time without saying any thing of the duke of Gloucester, the youngest son of the late king Edward of England, for I have not had any cause for so doing. But I will now speak of him, because his heart would no way incline to the French, and he was more pleased than hurt at the melancholy loss they had sustained in Turkey. He had with him a knight called sir John Lackingay, who was his most confidential adviser, and, as it was afterwards discovered, held with him such conversations as the following: ‘ These vain-boasting French have been nearly annihilated in Turkey. Such knights and squires as join company with them know not what they are about, and are ill advised when they do so, for they are so full of vanity and presumption, that they never can bring to a successful issue any thing they undertake. This has often been apparent during the wars of my lord and father, and our brother the prince of Wales, for they never could obtain a victory over our men. I know not why we have any truces with them: if it were with

with them, as we have good cause for quarrel, we would wage it now more successfully than ever, for the flower of the French chivalry is slain or in captivity. Our countrymen wish for war, for without it they cannot exist, and idleness to men at arms is death. I swear, therefore, by God, that if I be alive, and in health, two years hence, the war shall be renewed, for I will not keep any truce or peace. The French have shewn how little they have regarded them in former times, and have, by whatever treacherous and underhand means they could devise, deprived us of the duchy of Aquitaine, which was given up to my late lord and father, in conformity to a sound ~~greaty~~ of peace. This I have more than once charged them with, in the conferences on the other side of the sea; but they made such flourishing and complimentary speeches, they always lighted on their feet, and I was not attended to either by the king or by my brothers.

‘ If the king of England had a good head, and were as desirous as I am of war, and would take some pains to recover the inheritance they have shamefully stolen from him, he would find one hundred thousand archers and six thousand men at arms willing to cross the sea, and ready to serve him with their lives and fortunes. But things are not so. At this moment we have an unwarlike king, who is indifferent as to arms, otherwise he would shew himself in France; for there never was so favourable an opportunity to carry the war thither as at this present moment, since they would

be assured of a battle, and the people of this country, who are always eager to fight with those richer than themselves, for the sake of the spoil, would venture boldly, in the hope of having the like success with their ancestors under the king my father, of happy memory, and my brother the prince of Wales.

' I am the last of the royal family of England; but, were I believed, I would be the first to renew the wars, to retaliate for the wrongs that have been done us, and which they are daily doing by the connivance and weakness of our rulers, more particularly of our head the king of England, who has allied himself by marriage with the daughter of his enemy the king of France. That is a sure proof he will have no war: certainly not: he is too heavy behind, and only wishes for the pleasures of the table and the amusements of ladies. That is not the life for men at arms, who are desirous of renown and profit. I have not forgotten my last expedition through France. I might have had with me about two thousand lances and eight thousand archers. When we crossed the sea, we entered France by way of Calais, and continued our march through the country, without meeting any one to oppose us or offer us battle.

' Such formerly was the success of sir Robert Knolles, sir Hugh Calverley, sir Thomas Grandson, sir Philip Gifford, but they had not as many men as I had under their command, and yet they marched to the gates of Paris, and demanded battle from the king of France. No one, however,

ven-

ventured out to answer their challenge, and they continued their route without interruption into Brittany. You might then have marched from Calais to Bordeaux, without any one daring to oppose you; but I am persuaded whoever should now attempt it would be combated; for he who at present signs himself king of France is young, active, and has a strong desire to achieve some gallant enterprise. He would therefore fight with us, whatever might be the consequences, and that is every thing we could desire; for it has been by battle and victories over the French, who are so rich, that we are become wealthy: if peace continue, we shall languish and become more enervated than ever, since my nephew came to the throne of England. Things cannot long remain in this state, before the people will perceive and redress them. The king raises heavy taxes on the merchants, who are greatly discontented: he squanders the money no one knows how, and thus is the kingdom of England impoverished. True it is, that he gives largely to those about him, and in whom he confides, but the people pay for this, and it will shortly cause a rebellion; for they already begin to murmur, and to say publicly that such measures must not longer be suffered.

The king gives out that as soon as the truces between France and England shall be signed, he will make a voyage to Ireland, and employ there his men at arms and archers. He has already been there, and gained but little, for Ireland is not worth conquering: the Irish are a poor and

wicked people, with an impoverished country; and he who should conquer it one year, would lose it the next. Lackingay, Lackingay! all you have just heard me say consider as truth.'

Such were the conversations, as it was afterwards known, between the duke of Gloucester and his nephew, the king of England, and could no way speak well of him; and although he was, with his brother of Lancaster, the greatest personage in England, and one by whose advice the government ought to have been carried on, he paid not any attention to it. When the king sent for him, if it was his pleasure he would come, but more frequently he staid at home; and, when he obeyed, he was always the last to come and the first to depart. On giving his opinion, it must be implicitly followed, for he would not suffer it to be contradicted. He then took leave, mounted his horse, and set off for a handsome castle he had in Essex, thirty miles from London, called Pleshy, where he resided more constantly than any where else.

This lord Thomas was a great lord, and could afford to expend annually, from his income, sixty thousand crowns. He was duke of Gloucester, earl of Essex and Buckingham, and constable of England; and, from his rough manner, was more dreaded by the king than any other of his uncles, for, in his speech, he never spared him. The king was always submissive to him, and whatever he asked was instantly granted. The duke of Gloucester

cester had ordered many severe and hasty executions in England, and, without any title of reason or justice, had caused that prudent and gallant knight sir Simon Burley to be beheaded, with many others of the king's council.

This duke likewise caused the banishment of the archbishop of York and the duke of Ireland from England, notwithstanding the confidence the king reposed in them, accusing them of giving evil counsel to the king, keeping him under their governance, and wasting the revenues of the kingdom on themselves. The duke of Gloucester's two brothers of Lancaster and York resided generally with the king: he was jealous of them, and said to several (such as Robert* bishop of London and others) who went to visit him at his castle of Pleshy, that his brothers were too expensive to the king, and that it would be more decent for them to live at their own houses. The duke gained, by every possible means, the love of the Londoners; for he thought, if he acquired popularity with them, the rest of England would follow their example. The duke had nephew, son to his brother Lionel, duke of Clarence, who had married the daughter of Galeas, lord of Milan, and died at Asti in Piedmont. The duke of Gloucester would gladly have seen this nephew, called John earl of

* Robert Braybrook, who succeeded Courtnay, on his translation to Canterbury, 1381, and died 1404, having been chancellor of England scarcely six months.

Gough's Pleas, 2nd, p. 59.

March, on the throne of England, and king Richard deposed from it, saying he was neither worthy nor capable to hold the government of England; and this opinion he made no secret of to those who were in his confidence.

He invited this earl of March to come and see him; and, when at Pleshy, he unbosomed himself to him of all the secrets of his heart, telling him that he had been selected for king of England; that king Richard and his queen were to be confined, but with ample provision for their maintenance, as long as they lived; and he earnestly besought his nephew to believe all he said, for he should make it a point to put his plans into execution, and that he was already joined by the earl of Arundel, sir John Arundel, the earl of Warwick, and many prelates and barons of England.

The earl of March was thunderstruck on hearing this proposal from his uncle; but, young as he was, he dissembled his real sentiments, and prudently replied, to please his uncle and to get away, that he never thought of such things, and they

* He was third son of Edmund Mortimer earl of March, by Philippa, daughter of Lionel duke of Clarence, and was hanged 3d Henry VI. Sandford, p. 224. Froissart means Roger, his elder brother, slain in Ireland, 22d Rich. II., whose death Richard went over to avenge, when Henry IV. plotted to dethrone him. Ib. p. 226. This Roger was declared heir to the crown by parliament, 9th Rich. II. Leland's Collectanea, vol. i. p. 693. Froissart took the opportunity of the marriage of Lionel and Violanta to visit Italy, and dwells on the solemnities and festivals of the wedding.—Gough's Pleshy, p. 60.

were

were of such a magnitude as to require his deliberate consideration. The duke then, observing the manner of his nephew, desired he would keep what he had said very secret. This he promised faithfully to do, and, taking his leave, hastened from him, and instantly went to his estates in Ireland: he would never listen nor send any answer to all the proposals his uncle made to him, excusing himself honourably from taking part in them, as he foresaw they must end badly.

The duke of Gloucester employed all possible means to stir up troubles in England, and excite the Londoners against the king. The year that a truce had been signed between England and France, to last for thirty years, king Richard and his queen came to London, on their return from France: the duke of Gloucester whispered the citizens to petition the king to abolish all taxes and subsidies which had been imposed for the last twenty years, as it was reasonable they should now cease, since a truce had been signed for so long a term, and they had been levied solely as war-taxes, to pay the men at arms and archers in support of the war. He told the merchants, 'it was hard to pay thirteen florins out of every hundred as a tax on merchandise, which were spent in idle dances and feasts: you pay for them, and are sorely oppressed. Add to your petition a remonstrance for the realm to be governed according to ancient custom and usages, and that whenever there shall be any necessity to raise money for the defence of the kingdom, you will tax yourselves with such sums

as

as shall be satisfactory to the king and his council.'

This advice of the duke of Gloucester was followed by the Londoners, and many of the principal towns. They collected together, and went in a body to the king at Eltham, where they demanded redress of what they complained of, and that all taxes which had been raised for the support of the war should be instantly abolished. Only two of the king's uncles were present when the citizens presented their petition and remonstrance, namely, the dukes of Lancaster and York. The king desired they would answer the Londoners and the other citizens who had accompanied them, but particularly the duke of Lancaster, who said to them,—‘ My fair sirs, you will now, each of you, return to your homes, and, within a month from this day, come to the palace of Westminster, when the king, his nobles and prelates of the council shall be assembled, and your petition and remonstrance be taken into consideration. What shall then be thought right to maintain or abolish will be determined upon, and you may depend on having such redress as ought to satisfy you.’

This answer contented some, but not all; for there were among them rebels attached to the duke of Gloucester, who wanted a more speedy decision of their demands; but the dukes of Lancaster and York appeased them by gentle words, and they all departed. The matter, however, did not rest here; but at the month's end they again went to the king at Westminster, who was surrounded by his

his nobles and prelates. The duke of Gloucester was now present, and leant much to the petitioners; but, in the answer which was made to them, he dissembled his real thoughts, in order that the king, his brothers and the members of the council might not notice them.

The duke of Lancaster replied for the king, and, addressing himself to the Londoners, as they composed the majority, said,— ‘ Ye citizens of London, it pleases my lord the king that I give an answer to your petition: in obedience to his command, I shall declare to you what the king and his council have determined upon. Ye know, that to provide against dangers to the kingdom, ye, as well as the other cities and towns within the realm, agreed, about six years ago, that a tax of thirteen per cent. should be laid on all merchandise that was sold, and for which the king granted to you many privileges such as he will not take from you, but on the contrary may augment, if ye prove not undeserving of the favour. But since ye seem now to turn rebellious, and draw back from what ye had willingly before agreed to, he recalls his former favours; and here are his nobles and prelates, who have sworn to support him in all his lawful measures to the utmost of their power, and are now willing to continue their aid in maintaining all legal grants. Consider, therefore, calmly, this matter, and that the state of the king demands great expense; if his revenue is augmented one way, it is diminished another; besides, his receipts are not so considerable as they were in former times.

The

The war has involved greater costs than were provided for. The expenses of the ambassadors for the peace, on this and on the other side of the sea, have called for large sums; and those for the king's marriage have been very great. Although there is now a truce between England and France, the annual charges for the garrisons of the different towns and castles under the obedience of the king in Gascony, the Bordelais, Bayonnais and Bigorre, are very heavy. The fleet which must be maintained to guard our coasts and harbours costs a great deal. The frontiers of Scotland, and of our possessions in Ireland, must not be left defenceless, and they demand large sums. All these articles, and several others relating to the state of the king and country of England, annually absorb great sums, which the nobles and prelates understand and know much better than you can, who attend only to your trades and the disposal of your wares. Give thanks to God that ye have peace, and consider that no one pays that is not liable so to do, and carries on a trade, and that foreigners pay this tax as well as yourselves. Ye are much better off than those of France, Lombardy or other countries, where it is to be hoped your merchandise is carried; for they are taxed and taxed over again three or four times a-year, while ye only have a moderate duty imposed on your wares.'

The duke of Lancaster addressed them so mildly and calmly, that although they came thither with the worst intentions from the machinations of others, they were satisfied, and the assembly broke up without

without making any new demand, for the deputies from the majority of the principal towns were contented with the answer. There were some who would have rejoiced to have seen the meeting end differently, though they did not shew it openly. The duke of Gloucester returned to his castle of Pleshy, perceiving that this time he was disappointed in his expectations, and was constantly devising means of exciting disturbances in England and causing a rupture with France. In this attempt, he was joined by the uncle of his duchess, the earl of Arundel, who was desirous of war above all things; and they had successfully practised with the earl of Warwick, so that he obeyed their wills.

The king of England had two brothers by his mother's side; the eldest Thomas earl of Kent; the youngest, a valiant knight, sir John Holland earl of Huntingdon, and chamberlain of England. The last was married to a daughter of the duke of Lancaster; and it was he who had killed the earl of Stafford's son, as has been mentioned in this history. The issue of the earl of Stafford was a young squire, who was under the protection and wardship of the duke of Gloucester.

The earl of Huntingdon resided chiefly at the court of his brother the king of England, and was better acquainted than any other with the intrigues of the duke of Gloucester, from the private inquiries he made into his conduct. He was much afraid of the duke, for he knew him to be proud, cruel and passionate: he nourished his enemy under

under his eye, for the crime he had committed on the earl of Stafford's son had never been forgiven. King Richard was naturally fond of his brother, and supported him against all: he saw with pain that his uncle of Gloucester was his enemy, and took much trouble to form a party against him to force him to leave the kingdom. He and the earl of Huntingdon conversed frequently on this subject; during which time, the count de Saint Pol arrived in England, whither he had been sent by the king of France to see his daughter, the young queen of England, how they were going on, and to cultivate affection between the two countries; for, since the truce had been signed, it was the intention of the two kings and their councils, that France and England should be on the most friendly terms with each other, in spite of what their ill-wishers might attempt to the contrary.

The king and the earl of Huntingdon made the count de Saint Pol a hearty welcome on his arrival, as well from love to the king of France as because he had married their sister. At this moment, neither the dukes of Lancaster nor of York were with the king; for they began to dissemble with him, and to suspect, from the great murmurings in many parts of England on the king's conduct, that affairs would not end well: they therefore wished not to be called upon by the king or people, but left the whole to the duke of Gloucester and his accomplices. The king of England discoursed very freely with the count de Saint Pol, as well on the state of the country as concerning his

his uncle the duke of Gloucester, whom he described as very rough in his manners and rebellious in his conduct, and he related to him various instances of his flights.

The count de Saint Pol, on hearing them, was much surprised, and replied, ‘that such behaviour ought not longer to be borne; for, my lord,’ added he, ‘if you suffer him to go on, he will be your ruin. It is currently reported in France, that his only object is to break the truce and renew the war between France and England: by little and little he will win the hearts of the more indigent men at arms of the country, who wish for war rather than peace; and if such persons unite together, and hostilities commence, the more prudent part of the nation will not be listened to; for where wickedness and obstinacy govern, wisdom and common sense are not heard. Take your precautions beforehand; for it is better you make your enemies afraid of you, than that you should fear them.’

These words of the count made a deep impression on the king’s mind; and, as he was continually thinking on them, he renewed the subject with the earl of Huntingdon, on the count de Saint Pol’s return to France. The earl replied, ‘My lord, our brother-in-law Saint Pol has told you the real truth, and I would advise you to take measures accordingly.’

I was informed, that about a month after the departure of the count de Saint Pol from England, the king became exceedingly unpopular: it was

rumoured that the count had come to treat with the king for the restoration of Calais to the French. Nothing could have agitated the English more than such reports ; and the people were so uneasy, that the Londoners went even to Pleshy, to consult the duke of Gloucester on the occasion.

The duke, instead of calming, excited them more by saying, ‘ he could do nothing in the business ; for he was sure the French would give all the daughters of their king, if they could recover Calais.’ This answer made the Londoners very melancholy ; and they said they would see the king, and remonstrate with him on the agitation the whole country was in. ‘ Do so,’ replied the duke of Gloucester : ‘ remonstrate with him firmly, and make him fear you. Mark well the answer he shall give, so that you may repeat it to me the next time I see you ; and, when I know his answer, I will then give you my advice how to act. It may be that some iniquitous treaties are on foot, for the earl marshal, who is governor of Calais, has been twice at Paris, where he remained some time, and he was the most active in concluding the marriage of the king with the lady Isabella. The French are a subtle race, and see far into consequences : they pursue their object by degrees, and are extravagant in their promises and presents to gain their ends.’

The Londoners pursued the plan they had settled at Pleshy, and went to Eltham to speak with the king. At that time were with him his two brothers, the earls of Kent and Huntingdon, the earl

earl of Salisbury, the archbishop of Canterbury, the archbishop of Dublin his confessor, sir Thomas Percy, sir William Lisle, sir Richard Credon, sir John Golofre, and several more, all knights of the king's chamber. The citizens remonstrated temperately with the king : told him the cause of their coming, not in a haughty or harsh manner, but with courteous speech, and repeated to him the reports which were so current throughout England.

The king was greatly astonished at hearing them, and was much affected, though he dissembled his feelings. 'He appeased the citizens, by declaring there was not one word of truth in all the rumours that were so industriously circulated : that the count de Saint Pol had come hither to amuse himself, and that the king of France had also sent him, out of his affection to the king and queen of England, to see them ; but he swore, as God might help him, and on the faith he owed the crown of England, that no treaty of any sort had ever been mentioned, and he was astonished whence such scandalous reports could have arisen.

When the king had done speaking, the earl of Salisbury addressed the citizens : ' My good people of London withdraw to your homes, and be assured that the king and his council wish for nothing more than the honour and profit of England. Those who have busily said the contrary have been ill advised, and plainly shew they would with pleasure see the country in trouble, and the people in rebellion against their king. This you ought

particularly to dread, for you have before witnessed how near you were to destruction, when a few wicked persons rebelled; but were severely punished for it: depend upon it, that when the people are wicked, neither justice nor truth will be attended to.'

These speeches appeased the citizens, who were tolerably contented with what they had heard. Having taken leave of the king, they departed, on their return to London.

The king remained at Eltham, very melancholy at the words he had heard. He retained near his person his two brothers, and such of his friends as he had the greatest confidence in; for he began to doubt the affection of his uncles, from observing they now chiefly resided at their country seats. He was, in consequence, very suspicious of them, especially of the duke of Gloucester, whom he feared more than the dukes of Lancaster and York; and kept up a constant guard, night and day, of one thousand archers.

The king of England had received positive information that the duke of Gloucester and the earl of Arundel had plotted to seize his person, and that of the queen, and carry them to a strong castle, where they should be confined under proper guards; but allowed sufficiently for their table and other necessary expenses. That four regents should be appointed over the kingdom, of whom the dukes of Lancaster and York were to be the chief, and have under them the government of all the northern parts, from the Thames to the Tyne,

Tyne, and as far as the Tweed, that runs by Berwick, comprehending all Northumberland, and the borders of Scotland. The duke of Gloucester was to have for his government London, Essex, and that part of the country to the mouth of the Humber, and likewise all the coast from the Thames to the water of Southampton, and westward comprehending Cornwall. The earl of Arundel was to have Sussex, Kent, Surry, Berkshire, and all the country from the Thames to Bristol, and the river Severn, that divides England from Wales, where there are very extensive lordships, with power of punishing by death all offenders. But their chief design was to find out some means of re-kindling the war with France; and, if the king of France wished to have his daughter again, it might be done, for she was still very young, not more than eight years and a half old, and, perchance, when she was marriageable, she might repent of this connection, for she was innocently, and without her being able to judge for herself, married, and, beside, it was unjust to break off her match with the heir of Brittany; but should she wish to abide by her marriage, she would in justice remain queen of England, and enjoy her dower, but she should never be the companion of the king of England. Should the king die before she was of a proper age, she was to be sent back to France.

These were the plans that had been concerted by many of the English, particularly the Londoners, for they hated the king, and several now repented they had checked the mobs which attacked

London from the different counties of England ; for they had determined, according to their confessions when put to death, to murder the king, the earl of Salisbury, the earl of Oxford, and the whole of the king's council.

Had this been done, the kingdom would soon have found another head ; and the citizens, with the consent of the country, and the aid of the duke of Gloucester, (who took great pains to excite trouble and confusion) would have selected a fit person to wear the crown, and placed the government and kingdom in a different state to what it then was.

Such were the secret murmurings of the citizens, and others of their party, in their private meetings, the whole of which was told to the king by his spy ; and greater blame was laid on the duke of Gloucester for all this business than on any other person.

It is not to be wondered, if the king was considerably alarmed at the discovery of so much hatred and malice lurking against him. He paid greater court than ever to the duke of Gloucester and the citizens when they came to see him, but all in vain. At times, the king mentioned the matter privately to the dukes of Lancaster and York, who resided more with him than his uncle of Gloucester, and consulted with them how he could avoid the machinations of the duke and his accomplices, all of which he was thoroughly acquainted with. He addressed his uncles, saying,—
 ‘ My good uncles, for the love of God, advise
 me

me how to act. I am daily informed that your brother, the duke of Gloucester, and the earl of Arundel, with others, are determined to seize and confine me in one of their castles, and that the Londoners will join them. Their plan is to allow me a sufficiency for my state, but to separate my queen from me, who is but a child, and daughter to the king of France, and send her to some other place of confinement. Now, my dear uncles, such cruel acts as these must not be suffered, if they can be prevented. You have paid me homage, and sworn obedience to me as your sovereign, in the presence of your lord and father, king Edward, and my grandfather of happy memory, at the same time with the other barons and prelates of the realm. It is now twenty years since this was done; and I entreat you, therefore, from the love you bear me, and on the oaths you have taken, that you assist me on this occasion; for every thing assures me the duke of Gloucester only desires that war be renewed with France, in spite of the truces which you, with us and all England, have sworn to observe. In consideration of this was my marriage concluded with the daughter of the king of France, and we wish to observe every article of the treaty most punctually. You know also, that whoever attempts to infringe this truce will commit a crime, and be liable to corporal punishment, as well as confiscation of goods: you likewise know, that I have borne with your brother, my uncle of Gloucester, as much as I have been able, and made light of his menaces, but in

the end they may cost me dear. You are bound, therefore, by every tie, to give your best advice, since I require it from you.'

When the dukes of Lancaster and of York heard their nephew thus address them, and saw that he was in great anguish of heart; knowing, at the same time, that the greater part of what he had said was strictly true; they replied,—' My lord, have a little patience, and wait a short time before you make any rash resolutions. We know that our brother of Gloucester has the most passionate and wrong-headed temper of any man in England; but he cannot do more than man, and, if he work one way, we will counteract him another: you need not fear our brother so long as you shall follow our advice. He talks frequently of things he cannot execute; and neither he nor his abettors can break the truce which has been signed, nor confine you in any castle; we will never suffer it, nor that you be separated from the queen; for, if he imagine such things, he deceives himself. We therefore humbly beg you will be appeased, for, please God, every thing shall end well. Many things may be said that cannot be executed, and all which a man thinketh doth not come to pass.'

By such means, the dukes calmed the king's mind; but as they foresaw that public affairs would, from their bad management, cause troubles in the realm, and that the hatred between their nephew and brother was daily increasing, to avoid being called upon by either party, they left the king's household with their families, taking leave

leave of the king for a considerable time, and retired to their different castles. The duke of Lancaster carried with him his duchess, who had been some time the companion of the young queen of England. They took this opportunity of hunting stags and deer as is the custom in England, and the king remained with his attendants in and about London. They afterwards, however, greatly repented having left the king; for such things shortly happened as troubled the whole kingdom, which would not have been done had they remained with the king, for they would have more prudently advised than such counsellors as he listened to.

There was not one of the king's servants that did not fear the duke of Gloucester, and wish his death, no matter by what means. That gallant and loyal knight sir Thomas Percy had been for a long time steward of the household, and all the accounts passed officially through his hands. He noticed with grief the hatred that subsisted between the king and the duke of Gloucester, and other great barons of England.

Although he was beloved by all, he foresaw, like a man of understanding, that public affairs would end badly, and in consequence resigned his office into the king's hands in the most honourable manner he could, and requested permission to retire, which the king very unwillingly consented to. He gave such plausible reasons for his request that another was established in his place, and sir Thomas Percy went to his own estate, where

he resided. The king had about his person many young counsellors, who too much dreaded the duke of Gloucester : they frequently said to him,—‘ Very dear sir, it is a dangerous office to serve you, for we have seen our predecessors, in whom you had great confidence, meet but a poor reward. That valiant knight Sir Simon Burley, so much beloved by your lord and father, whom God pardon ! and who took such pains for the accomplishment of your first marriage, the duke of Gloucester, your uncle, put shamefully to death, by having him publicly beheaded like a traitor. He likewise, as you know, had many others arbitrarily executed without your being any way able to grant them your pardon, or save them from their ignominious deaths. Dear sir, we expect nothing better ; for whenever your uncle cometh hither to see you, which is not often, we dare not raise our eyes from the ground nor look at any body. He eyes us from head to foot, and seems to think we take too much upon us from being about your person ; and be assured, dear sir, that as long as he lives, there will never be quiet in England, nor will any one attempt to do any thing good. Besides, he publicly threatens to confine you and the queen, and keep you under subjection during his good pleasure. You will be an undone king, and destroyed as well as us, if you do not speedily take some strong measures. As for the queen, she need not care : she is young, and daughter to the king of France, whom they dare not anger, as too many evils would result from it to England.

Your

Your uncle of Gloucester, to make you more unpopular with your subjects, spreads abroad in London, (we have heard it) that you are unworthy to bear a crown, and to possess so noble an inheritance as England and its dependancies; that, when you married again, you chose the daughter of your adversary the king of France, for which you were very blame-worthy; and that you have debased the chivalry of England, and the courage of its knights, squires and nobles, who had so valiantly carried on the war against France, and would have continued it, enfeebled as they are, if you had not prevented them; that you have placed the kingdom in a most perilous situation, with great risk of its destruction, and that it is a pity you are suffered, and have been suffered, to reign so long. The French say (as the common report runs), that you intend to lay aside the arms of France from your arms, which causeth great hatred against you; and it is the more readily believed from the great pains you took to have the truce signed, which was done more through force than love, for the nobles of this country who had served in these wars would not assent to it: that you have not carefully examined the treaties signed by king John of France and his children, which those of his blood, now living, have treacherously infringed; and that the French, by underhand means, caused a renewal of war, and seized by usurpation the rights of your predecessors, and possessed themselves of very many towns, cities and castles in Aquitaine, to the great loss of the crown of England,

land, and all through your negligence and want of courage : that you have been afraid of your enemies, and not followed up the advantages you had in the justice of this quarrel, which you still have as well as your ancestors, who immediately have preceded you, such as your lord and father the prince of Wales, and the good king Edward, who both took such pains to augment the glory of the crown. Dear sire, the Londoners say, as indeed do numbers of others (which it behoves us not to conceal longer from you) that a day shall come when you will be reminded of these things to your cost.'

King Richard treasured up all these speeches in his mind, and pondered over them continually. Shortly after the departure of his two uncles of Lancaster and York, he summoned up more courage than usual, and said to himself, that it would be better he should destroy than be destroyed, and, that, within a short time, he would hold his uncle of Gloucester so securely, he should be incapable of injuring him. As he could not accomplish this alone, he opened himself to those most in his confidence.

It was to the earl marshal, who was his cousin, and also earl of Nottingham, that he discovered his intention, and most minutely gave him his orders how he was to act. The earl marshal, from the favours he had received, loved the king in preference to the duke of Gloucester, and kept the secret he had been entrusted with from all but such as he was forced to employ, as he could not do the whole

the whole himself. What I am about to say will explain the matter.

The king, under pretence of deer-hunting, went to a palace he had at Havering at the bower, in Essex : it is about twenty miles from London, and as many from Pleshy, where the duke of Gloucester generally resided. The king set out one afternoon from Havering, without many attendants, for he had left them behind with the queen at Eltham, and arrived at Pleshy about five o'clock : the weather was very hot; and he came so suddenly to the castle, that no one knew of it, until the porter cried out, 'Here is the king!' The duke of Gloucester had already supped, for he was very temperate in his diet, and never sat long at dinner or supper. He immediately went out to meet the king in the court of the castle, and paid him all the respect due to his sovereign, as did the duchess and her children.

The king entered the hall and the apartment, where the table was again laid out for the king, who ate some little ; but he had before told the duke, 'Good uncle, have your horses saddled, not all, but five or six, for you must accompany me to London, as I am to have a meeting to-morrow with the citizens ; and we shall surely meet my uncles of Lancaster and York, but I shall advise with you what answer to make to the Londoners' demands. Tell your house-steward to follow us with your servants to London, where they will find you.' The duke, suspecting nothing evil intended against him, too easily consented ; and the king, having

soon

soon supped, rose from table. Every thing being ready, the king took leave of the duchess and her children, mounted his horse, and the duke did the same, attended only by three squires and four varlets. They took their way to Bondelay, to avoid the high road to London, and Brentwood, with the other towns through which it passes. They rode hard, for the king pretended impatience to get to London, and conversed all the way with the duke of Gloucester. On their arrival at Stratford, near the Thames, where an ambuscade had been laid, the king galloped forwards, leaving his uncle behind, on which the earl marshal advanced to the rear of the duke, with a large body of men, and said, 'I arrest you in the king's name.' The duke was panicstruck, for he saw he had been betrayed, and cried aloud after the king, 'I know not if the king heard him, but he did not turn back, galloping on faster than before, and followed by his attendants.

We will now leave this matter for a short time,

CHAP. XLIX.

THE LORD DE COUCY AND THE COUNT D'EU,
CONSTABLE OF FRANCE, DIE IN TURKEY,
BEFORE THE TREATY FOR THEIR DELI-
RANCE IS ARRANGED.—A RANSOM IS AGREED
ON FOR THE OTHER PRISONERS WHO WERE
TAKEN AT THE BATTLE OF NICOPOLI.

YOU have before heard how sir John de Châ-
teaurrant and sir James de Helly were sent
by the king of France and the duke of Burgundy
as ambassadors to Bajazet, in Turkey, and of the
success of their mission. On their return to France
they were well received by the king, the duke and
duchess of Burgundy, from the certain intelligence
they had brought from the count de Nevers and
his fellow-prisoners. These knights told the king
they thought the sultan would readily listen to
terms for their ransom, for they had been so given
to understand by some of his principal advisers,
lest the prisoners might die while in captivity,
which was likely enough to happen, from the dif-
ference of air and diet, and they would not in that
case gain any thing by them. These words en-
couraged the duke and duchess of Burgundy to
exert themselves in procuring the ransom of their
son and heir, and they were occupied day and
night in devising means to open negotiations with
the sultan. The duchess said this battle of Nico-
poli

poli had been very unfortunate to her, for she had lost by it three of her brothers, who were gallant knights in arms : the first, the haze de Flandres, the second, sir Louis de Brézé, and the third sir John d'Ypres : there was another brother, the youngest of them, who had remained at home. To say the truth, the duchess had grief enough, and it was not surprising if she was melancholy, but the duke and his advisers calmed her, by their earnestness in procuring her son's liberty : this was not, however, soon done, for the distance and difficulty of treating with such people forced them to go about the business leisurely.

About the time I am now speaking of, that gallant knight and excellent man the lord Enguerand de Coucy, count de Soissons, and a potent lord in France, died at Bursay in Turkey. Sir Robert d'Esne, who had been sent to him by the lady de Coucy, had not advanced further than Vienna, on his journey thither, when he was informed of his death. He returned with this news to France, and told it to the family of the lord de Coucy, though not to the widow, before whom he did not appear until the governor of the castle of Saint Gobin was sent to seek the body, have it embalmed, and brought to France. It was conveyed to the abbey of Nogent near to Coucy, and received by the duchess of Bar, the bishop of Laon and many abbots : there the gentle knight was buried, and thus ended the year of grace 1397.

The

The king of France and the duke of Burgundy were very active in their endeavours to abridge the captivity of their friends in Turkey, and there passed not a day without their having some conversation on the subject. Sir Dinde de Desponde was of all their consultations, and said the Venetian or Genoese merchants could alone assist them; for by means of merchandise, which governs every thing, and their connections with other merchanes, they could pass every where, and learn the temper of the infidel sultans. They had great weight, particularly in Cairo, Alexandria, Damascus and Antioch, where they had factories, and the Saracens and Christians mutually interchanged their merchandises. The king and the duke, therefore, made as many friends among these merchants as they could, and gave up all intentions of making war on the duke of Milan from the friendship they learnt Bajazet bore him. On the other hand, king James of Cyprus knew well, that if he could any how soften the anger of the sultan, and prevail on him to accept of reasonable terms for the ransom of the French lords, he should greatly oblige the king of France, the duke of Burgundy and the whole of the nation.

To accomplish this, the king of Cyprus had a ship made of gold, curiously wrought, that might be worth ten thousand ducats, which he sent by his knights as a present to the sultan Bajazet. It was beautifully worked, and was graciously accepted by the sultan, who replied he would return him double its value in courtesy and affection. This answer, brought

brought back by the cypriote knights, was instantly made known to the king of France and the duke of Burgundy by some merchant, who wrote to sir Dinde that he might inform them of it. King James was wise in making this present : he dreaded the king of France, and all kings, for having murdered in the night-time his valiant brother king Peter, who had fought so courageously against the Saracens, and had won from them the towns of Satalia and Alexandria ; and they were more afraid of him than of all the other kings or emperors in Christendom.

King James had sorely repented having committed this crime, or being present when it was done ; and, not daring to continue in Cyprus, for the Christians would have put him to a disgraceful death, could they have caught him, he embarked on board a galley belonging to some Genoese merchants which was in the port of Nicosia, where the murder had been done, and fled to Genoa. The Genoese kindly entertained him, and some say that this villainous murder had been instigated by them ; for, shortly after, they entered the harbour of Famagousta with a large fleet of galleys and men at arms, which they took possession of, and have held by force ever since.

True it is, that the late king of Cyprus had a very promising youth for his son, whom he brought with him, in company with a knight who had travelled through Lombardy to Rome, the last time he had crossed the sea : this youth the Cypriotes crowned their king on the assassination of his father,

father, but he lived not long to enjoy it. On his death, the Genoese brought back James, whom they had crowned king, and he has reigned ever since in Cyprus; through the support the Genoese give him against all nations.

They would never give up possession of the town or port of Famagousta, and are the masters of it at this present moment of my writing these chronicles. Indeed, had the Genoese not held it, the Turks and Infidels would have conquered the whole of the island, as well as Rhodes and the other adjacent islands; but the Venetians and Genoese are their great opponents. When the last saw that the kingdom of Armenia was conquered by the Turks, they seized the town of Cource, that is situated on the sea-shore, which they have kept under their governance. The Turks, were they not fearful of Cource and Pera, near Constantinople, would do the greatest mischief to all who navigate those seas, as well as to Rhodes and the neighbouring islands.

It is by these means the frontiers of Christendom are defended; but let us return to king James of Cyprus. When he found, from the base crime he had been guilty of, he was fallen under the displeasure and hatred of every crowned head, he exerted himself to the utmost to recover their favour, and thought himself highly honoured by the letter the king of France had written to him. He was afraid of him, and not without reason, for the duke of Bourbon, uncle to the king of France, was, by right of succession through the Lusignans,

the true heir to the throne of Cyprus. This king James, although brother to the late king, was not so by lawful marriage, but a bastard, as was well known to the Genoese. When they gave him the crown they mutually entered into special treaties with each other ; and the Genoese bound themselves to defend his and his descendants' rights to the government against all claimants : in consideration of which, they had many lordships and tracts of land yielded up to them in the island of Cyprus. Every thing they did in the defence of king James was to strengthen themselves against the Venetians, and to open greater markets for their trade with the Saracens, for, as factors, they have many connections, with them and others of their faith. King James, through the Genoese, took great pains to please the king of France and his subjects, and it was in consequence of this he had made Bajazet so very rich a present, which was highly pleasing to the sultan and his ministers, who valued it much. It was supposed by many, that sir Dinde Desponde had urged on the Genoese in this matter, as they were very warm in their endeavours to bring about a treaty for the deliverance of the count de Nevers and the other prisoners.

The duke and duchess of Burgundy heard, with infinite pleasure, that the sultan began to tire of his prisoners, and would readily enter into a treaty for their liberty. They selected a valiant knight from the country of Flanders, called sir Guisbreth de Linrenghen, who was regent of Flanders

Flanders under the duke and duchess of Burgundy, to go to Turkey and treat with Bajazet for the ransom of the French lords. At the same time, they sent for sir James de Helly, and entreated that he would accompany their ambassador, because he was well acquainted with the countries he was to travel through, and with the court of the sultan, promising that his trouble and attention should be handsomely remunerated.

Sir James, having promised to fulfil their commands, set out in company with the Flemish knight : on their arrival in Hungary, they waited on the king, to deliver the letters which were intrusted to them. The king received the letters and knights with joy, in compliment to the king of France : he was before acquainted with sir James de Helly. They informed the king, the object of their mission to Bajazet was to treat for the release of his prisoners, if he were inclined to listen to them. The king of Hungary replied, that it would be well done if they could obtain their liberty for money : and the attempt was worth trying, for nothing could be lost by that. He offered them every assistance in his power, of money or men, for which the knights thanked him.

They had many difficulties to encounter, before they could enter into a personal treaty with Bajazet ; for it was first necessary that sir James de Helly should wait on the sultan to obtain a passport for sir Guisfebreth de Linrenghen to travel through

Turkey, which having been properly made out, he returned with it to Hungary. They journeyed to Turkey together; and Bajazet received the regent of Flanders with kindness, and listened to his proposals, which formed the basis for a treaty. At this time, there lived a Genoese merchant called Bartolomeo Pelegrini, in the island of Scio, who was universally esteemed for his probity and knowledge in trade, even by Bajazet himself: to him sir Dinde de Desponde had written to interest himself in the business, that it might have a more speedy termination, for they were well known to each other, and promised him a handsome recompence, if successful, in obtaining the French lords' liberty, from the duke and duchess of Burgundy, and other lords and ladies who had friends or husbands in the power of Bajazet. He entreated him to take upon himself the debt for their ransom, however large the sum, and to conduct the French lords to Venice, or to some part under the government of the Venetians; and that, the moment he should be assured from him of their arrival thither, he would, without delay, hasten to Venice in person, with the amount of the sum to repay him what he had expended. The Genoese merchant complied with the request of sir Dinde, as well from personal regard to him, as for the profit and honour he should acquire by it, and for the esteem he should gain from the king of France; for, from such a king, it was worth having.

From

From the information I had, I am inclined to believe that the king of Cyprus sent some of his ablest counsellors to push forward the negotiations with the sultan, in compliance with the solicitations of the king of France and the duke of Burgundy. The lords de Mathelin and d'Amine, two great barons of Greece, and much in favour with Bajazet, interfered also in the matter, according to the requests that had been made them from France, otherwise they would not have troubled themselves about it.

Turkey was an extensive country, and not convenient to travel through, to those unaccustomed to it: Bajazet, therefore, as soon as he had consented to a treaty, resolved that all the French prisoners should be conveyed to Bursa, where the whole business should be concluded. Those lords were brought thither, to the amount of twenty-five; but their conductors, the Turks, treated them scandalously on the road, by beating them forward, for they had purposely badly mounted them, and their horses would only go at a foot's pace: for this they were beaten by the Turks, who heard, very unwillingly, that they were to have their liberty.

On their arrival at Bursa, where the negotiators from the king of France, the duke of Burgundy, the king of Cyprus, the Venetians and Genoese were waiting to receive them, they had more liberty than when in the prisons of the sultan: but, notwithstanding it was known they were to be ransomed,

somed, they were so closely guarded that they could not obtain a fourth part of their wishes. Among the different persons who were at Bursa on account of the treaty, Bajazet inclined more to sir Guisебreth de Linrenghen, for sir James de Helly had told him he was regent of Flanders and the most confidential counsellor of the duke of Burgundy. The sultan resided in a handsome castle near Bursa, and where the negotiators went to discuss matters with him : the ransom for the twenty-five prisoners was fixed at two hundred thousand ducats. The lords de Mathelin and d'Amine, with the Genoese merchant of Scio, pledged themselves to the sultan for the due payment of it. The count de Nevers gave his oath to the merchant, for himself and the rest, that on his arrival at Venice, he would never depart thence until the whole of this sum were paid to his satisfaction.

Before the treaties were concluded, the count d'Eu was so much weakened by sickness, change of air, and diet he had not been accustomed to, that he departed this life at Haute-loge, where he had been confined with the other lords, who were much afflicted thereat, though they could not any way prevent it. The lord Philip d'Artois, count d'Eu and constable of France, was, when dead, opened and embalmed, and in this state put into a coffin and carried to France, where he lies buried in the church of Saint Laurence at Eu.

When

When the sultan Bajazet was completely satisfied as to the security of those who had pledged themselves for the payment of the two hundred thousand ducats as the ransom for the French lords, the two ambassadors from the duke of Burgundy were impatient to return to France, and carry the joyful news of their success to the king and other lords so greatly interested in it. They took leave of Bajazet and those of his court they were the most intimate with; and, as the regent of Flanders was in his favour, the gallant sultan ordered, that twenty thousand ducats should be deducted from the two hundred thousand he was to receive, and given to the two knights, in consideration of the great pains they had taken to accomplish these treaties.

The two knights gratefully thanked the sultan, as they had reason, for his magnificent gift, and, after taking leave of the Turkish court and the French lords, returned to Bursa. They there left the count de Nevers and his companions, waiting the lords de Mathelin * and d'Amine, who were to come for them in their galley, and embarked on board a small passage-galley for Mathelin. On quitting the harbour, the sea was calm and the weather temperate; but they had not advanced far before it changed, and at length became so tempestuous that sir Guisебreth, sorely tormented by

* D. Sauvage supposes, in a marginal note, this must be the lord of the island of Mitelino, but confesses his ignorance of the other.

sea-sickness, died before they could reach Mathelin. Sir James de Helly was much grieved for his loss, and, engaging a Venetian galley, sailed to Rhodes. He published every where the deliverance and speedy arrival of the count de Nevers and his companions, to the great joy of the knights of Rhodes. On his arrival in France, he made the king, the duke and duchess of Burgundy, and the nation, happy by the good news he had brought: Sir James spoke loudly in the praise of his companion, sir Guisfebreth, and of the great pains he took to conclude the treaty.

The sultan Bajazet, having had every thing respecting the ransom of his French prisoners settled to his satisfaction, resolved on allowing them more liberty, for indeed they were now no longer prisoners, and invited them to his presence before the departure of the ambassadors, to show them the magnificence of his establishments. They were said to be very grand indeed; and immense numbers were daily attendant on his person. He sent some of his principal lords to invite the count de Nevers and his companions to the castle, where he received and entertained them handsomely: he ordered all things they might want to be delivered out to them by his officers, as was the usual custom of his court. The sultan conversed daily with the count de Nevers, by means of an interpreter, and paid him much respect, for he knew that he was, or would be, a very great lord in France, by the great exertions that were made, and the large sum paid

paid for his ransom, which was enough to satisfy his avarice, having securities for the amount of one million of florins.

The other French lords were equally astonished with the count de Nevers at the power and state of Bajazet. He was attended by such numbers, that they were always encamped, for no town could lodge them ; and the expense must have been very great to supply so many with food. It was surprising where such quantities came from, notwithstanding the natives of warm climates are very temperate in their diet, eating but little meat, living on spices and sugar, of which they have abundance, as well as goats' milk, the common beverage of the Turks and Saracens, and they have plenty of bread made of millet.

The sultan had at this time seven thousand falconers, and as many huntsmen : you may suppose from this the grandeur of his establishments. One day, in the presence of the count de Nevers, he flew a falcon at some eagles : the flight did not please him ; and he was so wroth, that, for this fault, he was on the point of beheading two thousand of his falconers, scolding them exceedingly for want of diligence in their care of his hawks, when the one he was fond of had behaved so ill.

Another time, when the count de Nevers and the French barons were with the sultan, a poor woman came to him in tears, to demand justice against one of his servants, and said,—‘ Sultan, I address myself to thee, as my sovereign, and com-

plain of one of thy servants, who is, I understand, attached to thy person. He this morning entered my house, and seized by force the goat milk I had provided for myself and children, and drank it against my will. I told him that I should complain to thee of this outrage, but I had no sooner uttered the words, than he gave me two great cuffs, and would not leave me, though I ordered him in thy name. Sultan, do me justice, as thou hast sworn to thy people thou wouldest, that I may be satisfied, this injury be punished, and that every one may know thou wilt see the meanest of thy subjects righted.'

The sultan was very rigidly determined that all crimes committed within his dominions should be severely punished: he therefore listened to her attentively, and said he would do her justice. He then ordered the varlet to be brought, and confronted with the woman, who repeated her complaint. The varlet, who dreaded Bajazet, began to make excuses, saying it was all false. The woman told a plain tale, and persisted in its truth. The sultan stopped her, and said,—‘ Woman, consider well thy accusation; for, if I find thou hast told me a lie, thou shalt suffer death.’ ‘ Sir,’ replied the woman, ‘ I consent to it; for, were it not true, I could have no reason to come before thee, and I only ask for justice.’ ‘ I will do it,’ answered the sultan, ‘ for I have so sworn, and indiscriminately to every man or woman within my dominions.’ He then ordered the varlet to be seized,

seized, and to have his belly opened, for otherwise he would not have known if he had drank the milk or not. It was there found, for it had not had time to be digested ; and the sultan, on seeing it, said to the woman, ‘ Thou hadst just cause of complaint : now go thy way, for the injury done thee has been punished.’ She was likewise paid for her loss. This judgment of Bajazet was witnessed by the French lords, who were at the time in his company.

Brooke, Printer,
Paternoster Row.

55

